ŠKODA

ŠKODA Octavia
Owner's manual


5E0012720AF

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are included in this manual.

The operation of some functions and vehicle systems is carried out via Infotainment.

Please do not read just this manual, but also the Infotainment manual carefully as well. Operation in accordance with the two instruction manuals is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

5E0012720AF

Table of Contents

General Maintenance

Do-it-yourself

Technical data

Index

On-board literature

You will always find this **Owner's manual** and the **Service plan** in the on-board literature for your vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the on-board literature may also include the **Infotainment manual**and in some countries also the brochure **On the road**.

Owner's manual
This Owner's manual applies to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment variants. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **illustrations** in this manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. Changes to the scope of delivery with regard to design, equipment and technology are therefore possible at any time. The information listed in this manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this manual.

Service plan
The service plan includes the documentation of the vehicle handover and information relating to the warranty and service events.

Infotainment manual
The Infotainment manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

On the move brochure
The On the move brochure contains phone numbers of importers and service offices in individual countries and emergency numbers.

Notes

Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA Service Partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols

An overview of the symbols used in the Owner's manual and a brief explanation of their meanings.

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings.
- ▶ Continuation of the module on the next page.
- Situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Registered trademark.
- Text display in the MAXI DOT display.
- Text display in the segment display.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Owner's manual

Structure of the manual
The Owner's manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Safety) - the title of the Section is always indicated at the lower left-hand side
  - **Main chapter** (e.g. Airbag system) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated at the lower right-hand side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Airbag overview)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the topic** - Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content, any necessary information applicable to the entire chapter
      - **Module** (e.g. Front airbags)

Information search
When searching for information in the manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front" and "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
The volume, weight, speed and length data is given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this Owner's manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, unless specified otherwise.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
AHL	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CNG	compressed natural gas
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
D	Rim depth
EU	European Union
G-TEC	Labelling for natural gas vehicles
GSM	Global System for Mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo charging and common-rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
Wi-Fi	Wireless data network
XDS	Functional expansion of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
✓ Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
✓ Secure all items of luggage.
✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
✓ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
✓ Adopt the correct seated position » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

✓ Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol or drugs.
✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

› Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
› Belt force limiters for the front seats.
› Belt tensioners for the front seats.
› Seat belt height adjusters for front seats.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
› Driver's knee airbag.
› Front side airbags.
› Rear side airbags.

› Head airbags.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height[1].
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries during an accident caused by the deployed airbag.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 22, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seated position for the driver

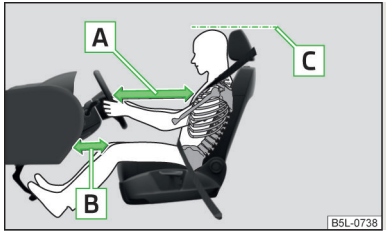

Fig. 1
Correct seated position for the driver

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ For vehicles with driver knee air-bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - B » Fig. 1.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 1. Adjust the steering wheel » page 10, *Adjusting the steering wheel position*.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head[1] C » Fig. 1.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Using seat belts*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 86.

[1] Not valid for sport seats.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

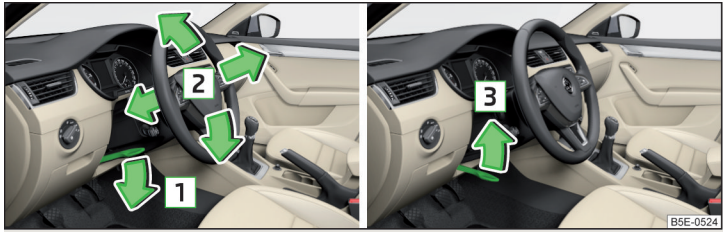

Fig. 2 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swivel the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 2.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in the direction of arrow 2.

› Pull the safety lever in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop.

WARNING

- The safety lever must be locked while you are driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey – risk of accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head[1] C » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 86.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 21, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

[1] Not valid for sport seats.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Using seat belts*.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 86.

Examples of an incorrect seated position

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if your seatbelts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not knee on the seats.
- ✓ Do not tilt the seat backrest too much to the back.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear seat bench.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front area of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.
- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.
- ✓ Do not transport somebody in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without fastening the seat belt.
- ✓ Do not remain in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

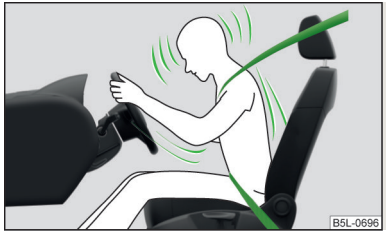

Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is as much as possible absorbed by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy in the best possible way. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 22.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 14, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use one seat belt to secure two people (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 92.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 187.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a head-on collision

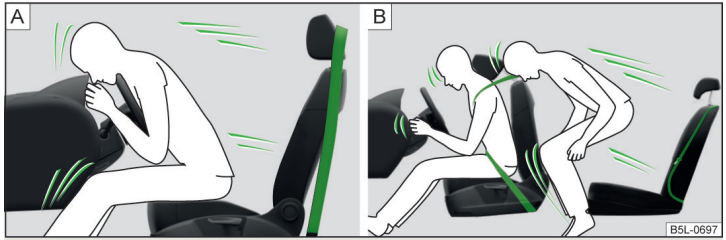

Fig. 4 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg “increases” at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 – B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

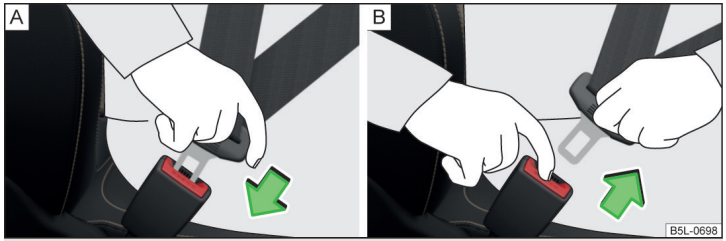

Fig. 5 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

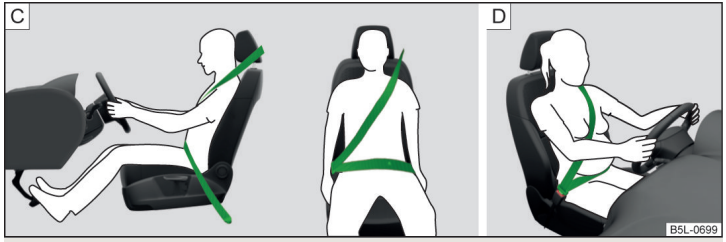

Fig. 6 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint[1] before fastening the seat belt » page 9.

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 5 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - B; the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

[1] Not valid for sport seats.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

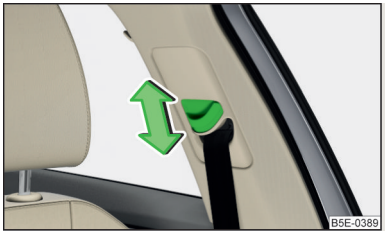

Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the seat belt height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Intertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also block when during full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The seat belts are automatically tensioned on the impact side in the event of a side-on collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

i Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 38.

When the airbags are deployed they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system consists – depending on the vehicle equipment – of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 17.
- Driver's knee airbag » page 18.
- Side airbags » page 19.
- Head airbags » page 20.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 38.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 21.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag/activation in dash panel centre » page 21.

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following occurs.
- The interior lighting illuminates (if the switch for the interior lighting is in the door contact position).
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags

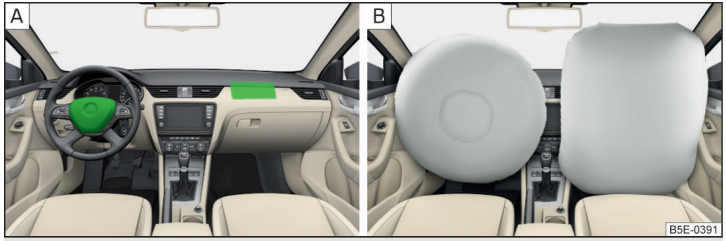

Fig. 8 **Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags**

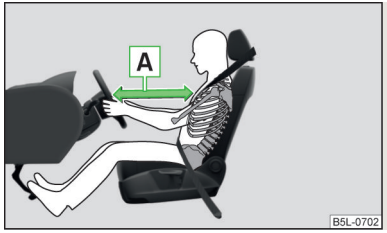

Fig. 9
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A .

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 8 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 21, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with a driver's front airbag, the text AIRBAG can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with a front passenger airbag, the text AIRBAG can be seen on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver's knee airbag

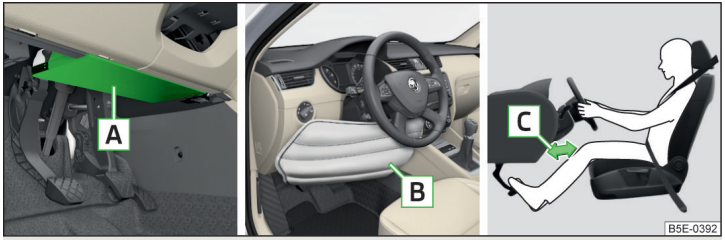

Fig. 10 **Installation of the airbag / Gas-filled Airbag / Safe distance between the legs and the instrument panel**

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag A is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag B and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs C and the instrument panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 10. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, the text AIRBAG can be seen on the side panel on the driver's side.

Side airbags

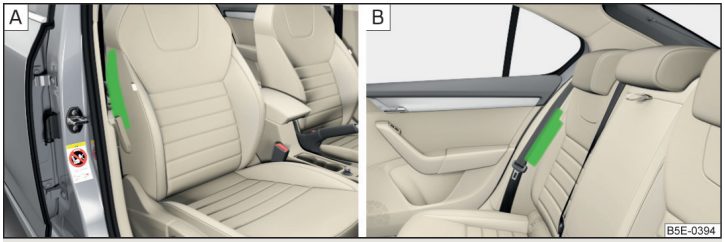

Fig. 11 **Installation of airbags in front/rear seat**

Fig. 12 **Inflated airbags**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 11 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 11- B.

When the side airbags are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag » Fig. 12 and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 24, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 22, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. the installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 179, *Airbags*.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

- In vehicles with side front airbags, a label with the text **AIRBAG** is located on the front seat backrests.
- In vehicles with rear side airbags, the text **AIRBAG** can be seen between the entrance area and the rear seat rest.

Head airbags

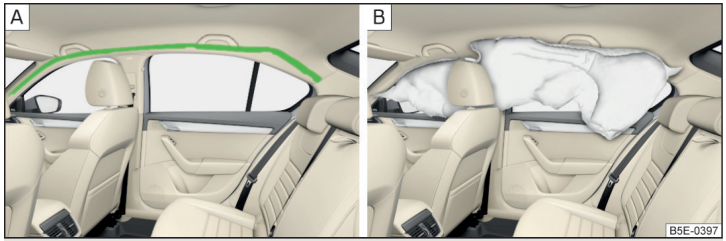

Fig. 13 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 13 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 13 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 177.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the text **AIRBAG** can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones outlined below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forward-facing child seat in some countries) » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
- If not being able to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 21, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags as appropriate.

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag switched off with the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The warning light OFF » Fig. 14 *on page 21* - B comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

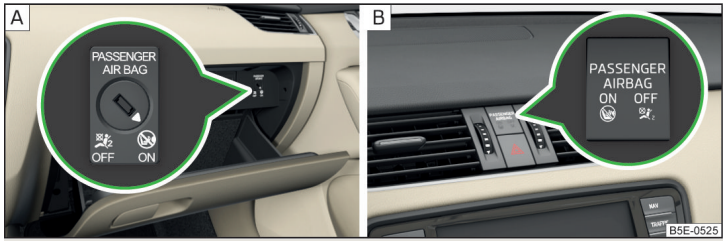

Fig. 14 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for the front passenger airbag**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position OFF » Fig. 14 - A.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check that the warning light OFF underneath the text PASSENGER AIRBAG » Fig. 14 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position ON » Fig. 14 - A.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.

› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light ON underneath the text PASSENGER AIRBAG » Fig. 14 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The ON warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights ON OFF flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
  - Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
  - The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire travelling time! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 23, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 88. After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODAvehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan

Fig. 15
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

Fig. 16 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, or even death.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

› It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.

› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat.

WARNING

▪ It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat » page 21, *Deactivating airbags*.
▪ **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
▪ This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  ▪ On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 15. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  ▪ On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 16.
▪ With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
▪ Once the child seat, in which the child is transported with the back to the direction of travel, is no longer used in the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan

Fig. 17 **Front passenger sun visor label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 17.

Child safety and side airbag

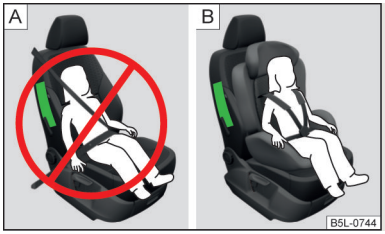

Fig. 18
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 18 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 18 - B.

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

Read and observe and on page 22 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe and on page 22 first.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening elements

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system

Fig. 19
Labels on the ISOFIX system

ISOFIX represents a system for the fast and secure attachment of a child seat.

There are two attachment points between the seat backrest and seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing a child seat with the ISOFIX system» Fig. 19.

First remove the caps to access the locking eyes.

After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle using the ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a]	Front passenger seat[b]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg		X	IL-SU	X
3 22-36 kg		X	IL-SU	X

[a] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

[b] If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIXsystem attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of a ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

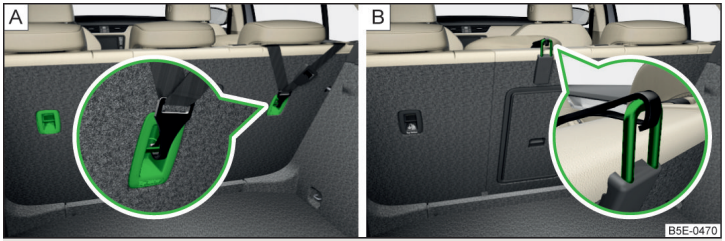

Fig. 20 **Anchor eyelets on the TOP TETHER system**

TOP TETHER represents a fastening system that restricts movements of the upper part of the child seat.

The attachment points for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 20 - A.

Some country-specific models may also feature an attachment point on the back of the middle rear seat backrest » Fig. 20 - B.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER** system on the seats that have the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

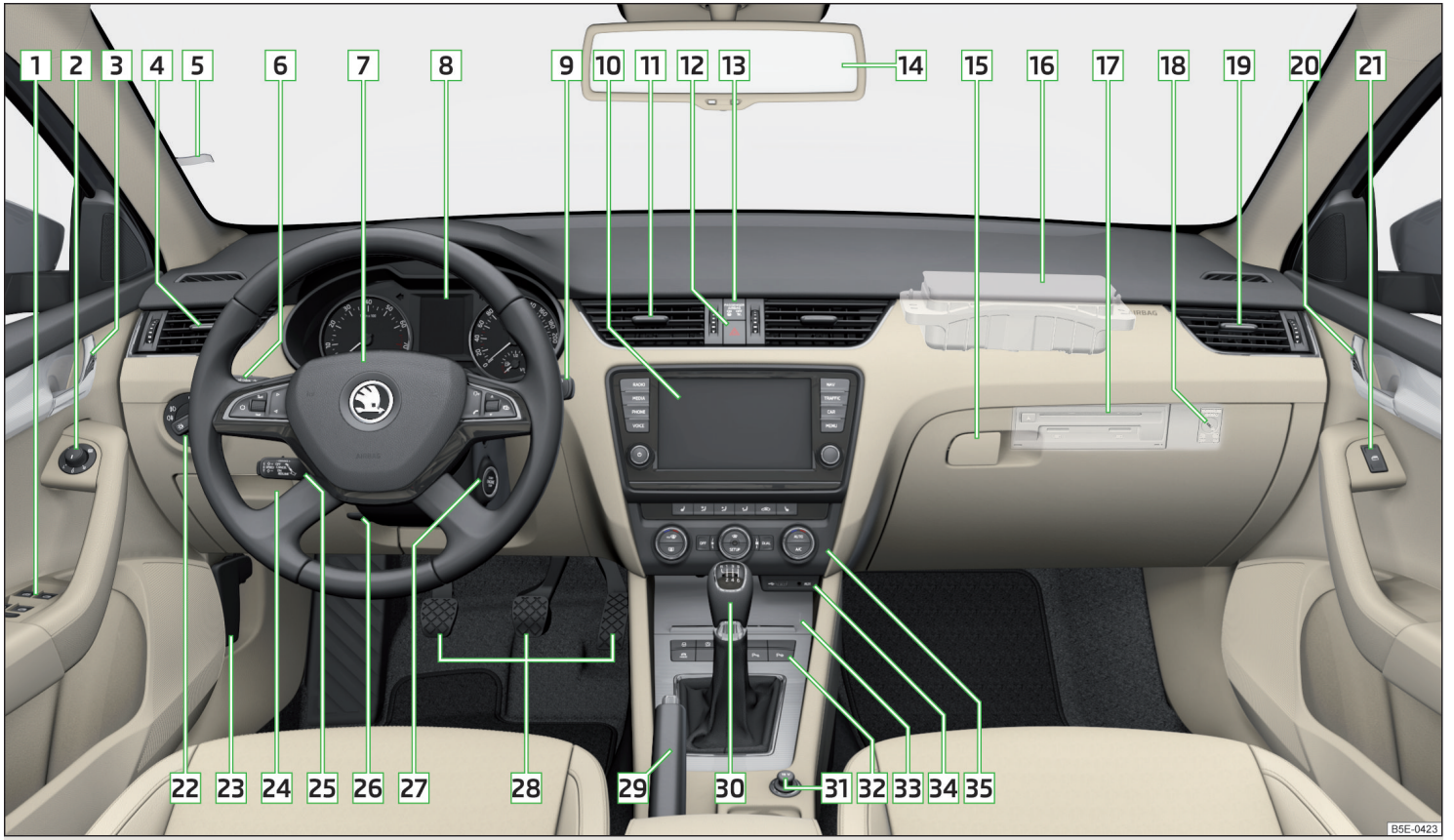

Fig. 21 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electrical power windows — 64
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 85
3 Door opening lever — 56
4 Air outlet vent — 116
5 Parking ticket holder — 95
6 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 73
› Speed regulating system — 148
› Activating the Assist systems menu item — 51
7 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 17
› With buttons for the operation of the information system — 45
› With buttons for the Infotainment Control » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *Device Operation*
8 Instrument cluster — 30
9 Operating lever:
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 81
› Multifunction display — 47
› Information system — 51
10 Infotainment » *owner's manual for the Infotainment radio or navigation*
11 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 116
12 Button for hazard warning light system — 77
13 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 21
14 Interior rear-view mirror — 84
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 100
16 Front passenger airbag — 17
17 CD/DVD drive and memory card slot (in the passenger-side storage compartment) » *owner's manual for the Infotainment radio and/or navigation*
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 21
19 Air outlet vent — 116
20 Door opening lever — 56
21 Power window in the front passenger door — 65
22 Light switch — 71
23 Bonnet release lever — 194
24 Storage compartment on the driver's side — 95
Fuse box (behind the storage compartment on the driver's side) — 228
25 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control — 152
26 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 10
27 Ignition lock — 127
28 Pedals — 132
29 Handbrake lever — 131
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 132
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 133
31 Depending on equipment fitted:
› 12-Volt power socket — 98
› Cigarette lighter — 97
32 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
› Central locking system — 58
› START STOP — 158
› Traction control TCS — 139
› Electronic Stability Control ESC — 138
› Selection of travel mode — 160
› Park Assist — 144
› Parking aid — 140
› Tyre control display — 167
33 Shelf/phonebox — 96

34 Depending on equipment fitted:
› USB/AUX input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *USB/AUX Inputs*
› MEDIA IN input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *MEDIA IN input*

35 Depending on equipment fitted:

Note

The position of some of the controls on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 21. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

M **Error: instrument cluster. Workshop!**

S **COMBINED INSTRUM_WORKSHOP**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

Note

If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » page 179, *Component protection*.

Overview

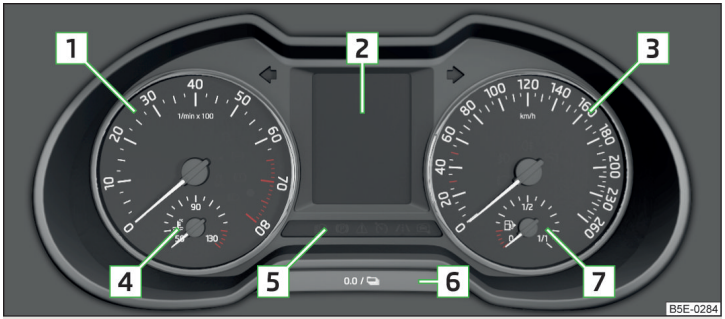

Fig. 22 **Instrument cluster**

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 31
› with warning lights » page 34
2 Display » page 31
3 Speedometer » page 32
› with warning lights » page 34
4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 32 ,/gas gauge[1] » page 32
5 Bar with warning lights » page 34
6 Button for:
› Setting the time » page 33
› Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 33
› Display charge level for the vehicle battery » page 34
› Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 53
7 Petrol/diesel reserve display » page 33

[1] Applies to G-TEC vehicles

Revolutions counter

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 22 *on page 31* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 46.

! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Display

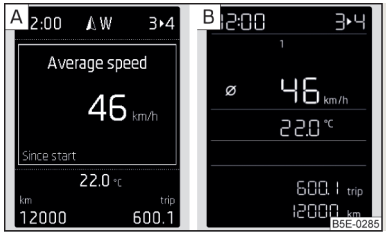

Fig. 23
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Display types » Fig. 23

A MAXI DOT display.
B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

› Distance travelled » page 33
› Time » page 33
› Warning icons » page 40

› Details of the information system » page 45
› Messages of the Auto Check Control » page 47
› Details of the service interval display » page 53

CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the MAXI DOT display can be either monochromatic "(black and white)" or color.

Speedometer

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The speedometer 3 » Fig. 22 *on page 31* displays the current speed.

Note

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[1]. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

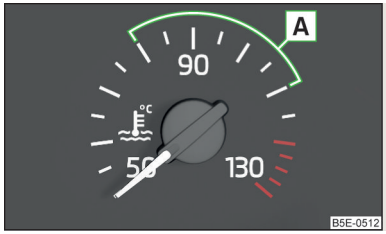

Fig. 24
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display » Fig. 24 provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The fuel gauge only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale A » Fig. 24. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high.

For further information, see » page 41.

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Fuel reserve display - Natural gas

Fig. 25
Gas gauge

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display » Fig. 25 provides information on the natural gas supply in the container.

The fuel gauge only works if the ignition is switched on.

[1] This function only applies to certain countries.

If the natural gas supply in the container reaches the reserve area, the icon appears in the display together with the following message.

Please refuel with CNG. Range: ... km

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

Fuel reserve display - Petrol / Diesel

Fig. 26
Gasoline / diesel reserve display

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display » Fig. 26 provides information of the petrol / diesel supply in the container.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The contents of the fuel tank for petrol / diesel is approximately 50 litres.

If the amount of fuel reaches the reserve area (the pointer reaches the red scale range), the indicator symbol » page 43 illuminates too.

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ▶ next to the icon within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

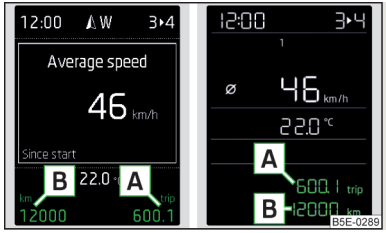

Fig. 27
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment Display

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Display » Fig. 27

A Counter for distance travelled (trip)
B Odometer

Counter for distance travelled (trip)
The daily trip counter shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 100 m.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Briefly press the button 6 » Fig. 22 *on page 31*.

Odometer
The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button 6 » Fig. 22 *on page 31* until the **Time** is shown in the display.
› Release the button 6, and the system switches to the time setting function.
› Press the button 6 again and set the hours.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button 6 again and set the minutes.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings*.

Viewing the charge level vehicle battery

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Press and hold the button 6 » Fig. 22 *on page 31* until the **Battery status** or **BATTERY SOC** is shown in the display.
› Release button 6 - the current charge level[1] of the vehicle battery is displayed in %.
› Wait about 4 seconds or press the 6 key, the system returns to the home setting.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The condition of some features and systems is shown by the warning icons on the display » page 40.

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster » Fig. 22 *on page 31*.
› Revolutions counter 1
› Speedometer 3
› Bar with warning lights 5

! WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 77. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 192, *Engine compartment*.

[1] Applies to vehicles with START-STOP system.

Automatic Transmission

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning lights indicate a fault or the state of the automatic gearbox.

Warning light	Message	Meaning and Action
	M **Error: gearbox. Reverse gear not available.** S **GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL**	Fault in the automatic gearbox, the reverse cannot be appealed. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	M **Error: gearbox.** S **GEARBOX ERROR**	Fault in the automatic gearbox. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.
	M **Gearbox overheated.** S **GEARBOX OVERHEATED**	The temperature of the automatic transmission clutches is too high. **do not continue to drive!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine. Switch on the ignition and wait until the warning light disappears – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears. If the warning light does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.
	M **Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!** S **STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**	
	M **Gearbox faulty. Workshop!** S **GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**	Fault in the automatic gearbox. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Release the handbrake!**

S **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **lights up**, the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Brake fluid: Owner's manual!**

S **BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK**

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 199 ».

If the warning light, together with the warning light, **lights up**, there is a problem with the ABS.

! WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!
- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 37, *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light **illuminates** as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten seat belts.

The indicator light **goes off** after the respective seat belt is fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, the warning light **flashes** and you will hear an acoustic signal.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light **lights up permanently**.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **lights up**, the delay of the ACC is not sufficient.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Apply the brake!

Further information » page 149, *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*.

Central warning light

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

When the warning light ⚠ or ⚠ **lights up**, the additional information in the display of the instrument cluster » page 40, *Warning icons in the display* or » page 47, *Auto-check control* must be observed.

Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Power steering

If the indicator light **illuminates**, this indicates a **complete failure** of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the indicator light **illuminates**, this indicates a **partial failure** of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock (KESSY system)

As long as the warning light **is flashing**, the steering lock cannot be released.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Move the steering wheel!

MOVE STEERING WHEEL

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.

If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

If the warning light **flashes** and a beep sounds, the electric steering lock is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Steering lock: Workshop!

STEERING WORKSHOP

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **flashes** and a beep sounds, the electric steering lock is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Steering lock faulty. Stop!

STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

Park the vehicle, **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. radio, navigation system), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance. If warning light does not go out once the engine has been restarted and the vehicle has been driven for a short period of time, this indicates a system error. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction Control System (ASR)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC system » page 138.

The warning light **flashes** to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Error: Traction control**

S **ASR ERROR**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminates after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Further information » page 138, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* and » page 139, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction control system (TCS) deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **is illuminated**, the TCS is deactivated.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Traction control (ASR) deactivated.**

S **ASR OFF**

Further information » page 139, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the ASR system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light **flashes** to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**

S **ESC ERROR**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the ESC system may be switched off for technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the indicator light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

Further information » page 138, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If warning light **illuminates**, this indicates a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Error: ABS**

S **ABS ERROR**

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS. ▸

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

In the event of an ABS fault, the other braking and stabilization systems are turned off » page 138, *Braking and stabilisation systems* .

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!
- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 35, *Brake system*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the rear fog light is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **does not come on** or **lights up continuously** once the ignition has been switched on, this indicates a fault in the glow plug system

If the warning light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC Engine performance check (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the indicator light EPC **illuminates**, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Security systems

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Fault with airbag system
When the warning light **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system.

M **Error: Airbag**
S **AIRBAG ERROR**

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored automatically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch
› The indicator light **illuminates** for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched **on**.
› The warning light OFF in the display PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF in the middle of the dash panel lights up after switching on the ignition » page 21.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool
› The warning **illuminates** for approx. 4 seconds after switching **on** the ignition and then **flashes** again for approx. 12 seconds.
› The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**
S **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

ProActive passenger protection
When the warning light **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

M **Proactive passenger protection not available.**
S **PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL**

or

M **Proactive passenger protection: funct. restricted.**
S **LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT**

WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light (!) lights up

If the warning light (!) illuminates while driving, this means that one of the tyres has undergone a pressure change.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

- Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 204.
- Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 214 or use the repair kit » page 218.
- Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 167.

The indicator light (!) flashes for about 1 min. and then remains lit

If the warning light (!) flashes for approximately 1 minute and then remains lit, there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light (!) flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The illumination of the warning light (!) can have the following reasons.
- The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are mounted.
- A wheel has been changed.

Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 167.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light (!) comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Brake linings

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the indicator light **is illuminated**, the brake pads are worn.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M Check brake wear!

S BRAKE PADS PLEASE CHECK

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Lane following system (Lane Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning lights indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

Further information » page 162, *Lane Assist*.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

Either the left or the right warning light **flashes** depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **flashes**, the trailer turn signal lights are turned on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light **is not flashing**, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

M Trailer: check left turn signal!

S TRAILER TURN SIG_ CHECK LEFT

The trailer must be unhitched properly » page 169, *Hitch and trailer*.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the fog lights are operating.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The indicator light **is illuminated** when the cruise control system and automatic distance control are switched on.

Brake pedal (automatic transmission)

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, operate the brake pedal.

Natural gas operation

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

If the warning light **is lit,** the vehicle is powered by natural gas.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 34 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the main beam or the headlight flasher is operated.

Warning icons in the display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The warning icons indicate the status of certain functions or faults.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 31.

Depending on the meaning, the symbol ⚠ or ⚠ in the bar lists up simultaneously with the corresponding control symbol, with indicator lights 5 » Fig. 22 *on page 31*.

Symbol	Meaning
⚠	Danger
⚠	Warning

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols ⚠ or ⚠ continue to be displayed without any extra messages for the driver.

Some warning icons can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

After switching on the ignition, some warning icons illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The status of some features and systems is shown by the warning lights » page 34.

On vehicles with a colour MAXI DOT display some warning icons in the display are in colour.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning icons and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 77. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 192, *Engine compartment*.

Rear seat belt warning

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

A rear seat belt is not fastened

A rear seat belt is fastened

The warning icons or **light up** after the ignition has been switched **on**.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular icon **lights up** briefly and indicates the current belt status.

Alternator

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The warning icon **lights up** if the vehicle battery is not charged when the engine is running.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If symbol lights up in addition to symbol while driving, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Coolant level too low

If the coolant level is too low, the warning icon **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M **Check coolant! Owner's manual!**

S **ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » page 198.
› If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » page 198.

If the indicator light **does not illuminate** after adding coolant and switching on the engine, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant is within the specified range and the warning symbol is still **lit** after switching on the ignition, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 230, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are OK and the warning symbol **lights up** again after switching on the ignition, **do not continue driving!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high
If the coolant temperature is too high, the warning icon **lights up** and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Engine overheat. Stop! Owner's manual!
ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

› Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
› Switch on the ignition and wait until the coolant temperature pointer returns to the operating range » page 32.
› Continue your journey only after the warning icon has disappeared.

WARNING
▪ Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
▪ Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off - risk of injury!

CAUTION
▪ Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
▪ Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

When the warning light **is flashing**, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Oil pressure: Stop! Owner's manual!
STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 196, *Checking the oil level*.
› If the oil pressure is too low, top up the engine oil » page 197.

If the oil level is within the specified range and the warning symbol starts to flash again after the engine is started, **do not continue driving!** Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION
If for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances, **do not continue driving!** Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Engine oil level too low
If the warning icons and ⚠ **are lit**, the engine oil level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Oil level: add oil!
ADD OIL

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 196.

The warning icon will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning icon will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high
If the warning icons and ⚠ are **lit** in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level is too high.

Reduce oil level!
OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 196.

Engine oil level sensor
If the warning icons and ⚠ are **lit** in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level sensor is defective.

Oil sensor: Workshop!
OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION
If for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The warning icon **comes on** if a bulb is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

M **Check right dipped headlight beam!**

S **DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT**

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning icon **illuminates**, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive for at least 15 minutes or until the warning icon goes out as follows.

✓ Gear 4 or gear 5 engaged (automatic gearbox: Position D/S).

✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.

✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon **goes out**.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, **illumination** of the warning icon **does not take place** and the warning light begins to **flash**.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Diesel particulate filter: Owner's manual!**

S **DIESEL PM FILTER OWNER MANUAL**

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

! CAUTION

- As long as the warning icon lights up, you must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

i Note

- We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

If the warning icon **comes on**, the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Top up washer fluid!**

S **WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP**

Top up with liquid » page 195, *Windscreen washer system*.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

If the indicator symbol **comes on,** the fuel level in the fuel tank has reached the reserve area.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Please refuel. Range: ... km**

S **PLEASE REFUEL RANGE ... km**

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Headlight assist

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The warning icon **lights up** when the headlight assist is activated » page 75, *High Beam assistant*.

START-STOP-system

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The warning lights indicate the state of the START STOP system » page 158, *START-STOP*.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The indicator symbol ❄ indicates an outside temperature below +4 ° C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, there may still be black ice on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

MAXI DOT display.

The indicator symbol **illuminates**.

M **Water in fuel filter. Owner's manual!**

Segment display

S **WATER IN FUEL FILTER**

CAUTION

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Conditions of the ACC system

The warning symbols indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 149.

ACC disabled

If the warning symbol **lights up**, the ACC is disabled.

› The following guidelines must be observed » page 155, *Information messages*.

Distance warning (Front Assistant)

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

If the warning symbol **lights up**, the safe distance to the vehicle ahead has been undershot.

Information on the Front Assistant system » page 155.

Advance warning/emergency brake (Front Assistant)

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

If the warning symbol **lights up**, the system detects a risk of collision or emergency braking has been automatically triggered.

Information on the Front Assistant system » page 155.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems.

These alerts and messages appear in the instrument cluster display 2 » Fig. 22 *on page 31* (hereafter only in the display).

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

› Driving data (multifunction display) » page 47.
› Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 51.
› Service interval display » page 53.
› Traffic sign recognition » page 164.
› Fatigue detection » page 166.
› Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 133.
› Information and alerts in the Assist systems » page 138.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

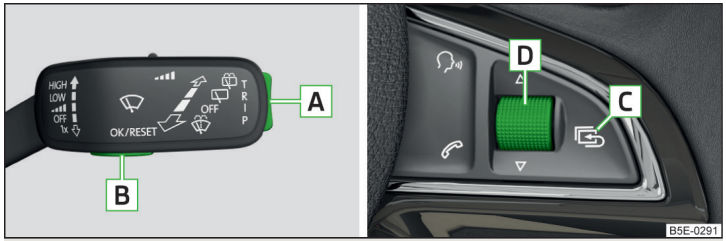

Fig. 28 **Buttons/adjustment wheel: on the operating lever/on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 45 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 28.

Description of the operation

Button / wheel	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or bottom	Select data / set data values
	Press top or bottom	Main menu of the MAXI DOT display
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Press briefly	To go up one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display
	Press and hold button	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display
D	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Outside temperature

Read and observe ! on page 45 first.

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C while driving, the following symbol ❄ (low temperature warning) is displayed and an audible signal will sound.

If the outside temperature when the ignition is switched on is below +4 ° C, the following icon appears in the display ❄ .

! WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Gear recommendation

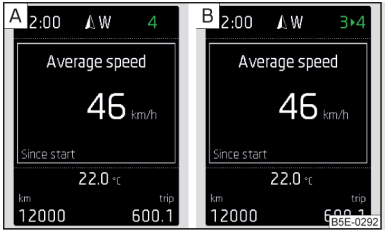

Fig. 29
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

Read and observe ! on page 45 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption.

A suitable gear is engaged, and if necessary a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

Display » Fig. 29

A Optimal gear engaged

B Recommended gear

Recommended gear

Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon ▶ and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if 3 ▶ 4 appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 3rd into 4th gear.

The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

For the sake of the environment

A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning

Read and observe ! on page 45 first.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is opne.

Auto-check control

Read and observe ! on page 45 first.

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Error messages and other information appears on the display.

Some messages are displayed simultaneously with the warning lights » page 34 or warning icons in the display » page 40.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After the message is displayed for the first time, the symbols ⚠ or ⚠ continue to be displayed without any extra messages for the driver.

Symbol	Meaning
⚠	Danger
⚠	Warning

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

Individual information can be shown or hidden in the infotainment system » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Note

In some national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measurement.

Memory

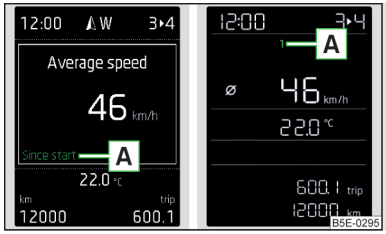

Fig. 30
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (M)/segment display (S)

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

In memory the values of some driving data information (e.g. average fuel consumption) are recorded.

The driving data operate using three memories.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position A » Fig. 30 .

Since start (M) Or "1" (S)
The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (M) And "2" (S)
The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9999 kilometres driven.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Since refuel (M) or "3" (S)
The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

Select memory
› Select the corresponding details of the driving data » page 48, *Information overview*.
› Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

Resetting
› Select the corresponding details of the driving data » page 48, *Information overview*.
› Select the desired memory.
› Press and hold to confirm the selected memory.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.
› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

The overview of the driving data information (the number of items displayed is different depending on equipment).

Range
The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the warning icon the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range can increase if you drive in a more fuel-efficient manner.

With G-TEC vehicles, the following details are displayed.
› Total range
› Range with natural gas
› Range with gasoline

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption[1] is calculated since the last time the memory was erased.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » page 48.

After erasing the memory, no fuel consumption data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

With G-TEC vehicles, the average consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Current fuel consumption
You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption[1].

The display appears in litres/hour[2] or in kg/h[3] if the vehicle is stationary or being driven at a low speed.

With G-TEC vehicles, the current consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, **---** are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » page 50.

Traffic sign recognition
The display can show up to three of the following traffic signs simultaneously.
› Speed limits (including additional signs).
› Overtaking prohibited.

Further information » page 164, *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current driving speed
The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer 3 » Fig. 22 *on page 31*.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 48.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The indicated information is updated continuously while you are driving.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 48.

The maximum distance indicated is 9999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » page 48.

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Convenience consumers
There, the total consumption of all consumer comfort in l / h is displayed. ▸

---

[1] The units for the displayed consumption are set in the Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Device settings*.

[2] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --,- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

[3] In natural gas mode.

Along with the consumption data, a list of the three consumers with the largest share of fuel consumption (e.g. air conditioning and similar devices) is displayed.

Refuelling amount[1)]
After the consumption of about 10 litres of fuel from the fully refuelled tank, an amount of fuel is displayed in l. This amount can now be **safely** refilled.

Natural gas quality
The details of the quality of natural gas are displayed as a percentage of between 70% to 100%.

The higher the value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption.

Coolant temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the temperature lies below 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

Warning at excessive speeds

Read and observe ! on page 47 first.

The system allows you to set a speed limit and when this is reached, an acoustic warning signal sounds.

The following warning message is shown in the display.

M **Speed ... km exceeded.**

S **SPEED TOO HIGH**

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Warning at** (M) or (S).
› Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item.
› Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Warning at** (M) or (S).
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit
› Select the menu item **Warning at** (M) or (S).
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
› By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle.** The information display also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the Infotainment, multi-functional indicator, etc.

! WARNING
Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Main menu

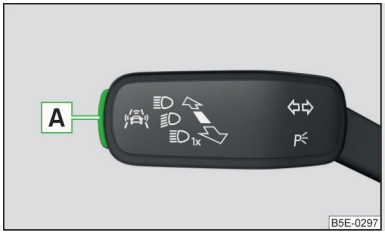

Fig. 31
Operating lever: Button to open the menu item wizard

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

Operating the MAXI DOT display » page 46.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **Driving data** » page 47
- **Assist systems** » page 162, » page 155
- **Navigation** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Navigation system (NAV button)*
- **Audio** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Audio (MEDIA button)*
- **Telephone** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Communication (PHONE button)*
- **Vehicle** » page 47, *Auto-check control*
- **Lap timer** » page 51, *Lap timer (Stop watch)*

Menu item wizard
In the menu item **Assist systems** the **Front Assist** and the **Lane Assist** can be confirmed and activated or deactivated .

The menu item **Assist systems** in the main menu can also be opened by pressing the button A on the control lever » Fig. 31.

Note

- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 46, *Using the information system* .
- For vehicles with Infotainment, the language of the MAXI DOT display can be set in the Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Device settings (SETUP key)* .
- For vehicles without infotainment, the language of the MAXI DOT displays can only be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Lap timer (Stop watch)

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

The Laptimer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The measured time is shown in the display.

Operation of the lap timer function » page 46, *Using the information system*.

The calculated times are displayed in minutes, seconds and deciseconds.

Activate Laptimer function
› From the main menu of the display select the menu item **Lap timer**.

The following functions are available.

- **Start** - start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement
Manually start the measurement
› Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Start**.

Start the measurement automatically
› Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Since start**. Timing will begin automatically when starting up.

Start timing of next round
› Select the menu item **New lap** during timing.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also shown in the display.

Measure split time

› During the timing, select the menu item **Split time**. The split time data is displayed for about 5 seconds in the display.

The split time can be measured repeatedly during a round.

Stop measurement

› During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time.
- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the aborted lap time is not stored)
- **Hang up** - End timing (the aborted lap time is stored)

Evaluate recorded times

› Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.

› **Fastest:** - The fastest lap
› **Slowest:** - The slowest lap
› **Average:** - The average lap time
› **Overall time:** - The total of all the lap times

Reset measured times

› Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics** - **Reset**.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the Lap timer system when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

Note

- The system allows the measurement of up to 11 lap times.
- The measurement of a single lap time is terminated after 99 h, 59 min. and 59 sec. After this time has been reached, measurement of the new lap time starts automatically.
- The measured times cannot be reset individually.
- If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Compass point display

Fig. 32
Compass display

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an arrows symbol as well as an abbreviation for each respective point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown in the display » Fig. 32.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Note

The direction indicator can be displayed at the top or bottom of the screen displayed in response to further information.

Eco-tips

Read and observe ! on page 50 first.

To minimise fuel consumption, fuel economy tips can appear in the display.

Eco tips are indicated next to the letters **ECO-TIP**.

For instance, if the air-conditioning is on and a window is open, the following message appears **ECO TIP Air conditioning switched on: close windows.**

Eco tips display must be activated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Note

Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

There is always the option to display the remaining days and miles until the next service date in the display.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the button 6 » Fig. 22 *on page 31* and hold down until the menu item **Service** appears in the display.
› Release the button 6.

The icon appears in the display, as well as the following message for example.

M **Oil change in ... km** or **Oil change in ... days**
S **OIL CHANGE IN ... DAYS** or **OIL CHANGE IN ... km**

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date

Before the next service date has been reached, after switching on the ignition, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display.

This indicator decreases in steps of 100 km or in days.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date

Once the service interval is reached, the icon appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message, for example.

M **Oil change now!**
S **OIL CHANGE NOW**

Or

M **Inspection now!**
S **INSPECTION NOW**

Or

M **Oil change and inspection now!**
S **OIL CHAN_ AND INSPECTION NOW**

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following applies after unlocking

› The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light operated via the door contact illuminates.
› The SafeLock system is switched off.
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
› The exterior mirrors are folded back into the driving position.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » page 89.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following applies after locking

› The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior light operated via the door contact goes out.
› The SafeLock system is switched on.
› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The exterior mirrors are folded back into the park position.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » page 89.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of injury and accidents! These individuals might also not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 224.
- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Note

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder

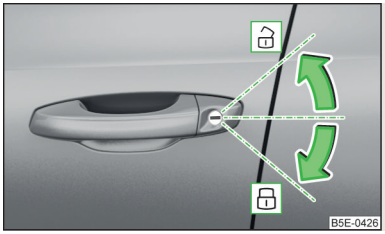

Fig. 33
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 54 first.

The key allows you to unlock or lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door » !.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 33

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

CAUTION

To unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control key via the lock cylinder, first remove the cap of the lock cylinder » page 225.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

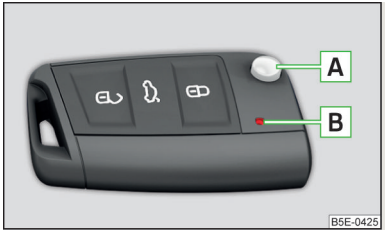

Fig. 34
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 54 first.

Function and description of the remote control key » Fig. 34

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking/releasing the boot lid
- A Button for folding the key in/out
- B Warning light

Unlocking/releasing the boot lid

Briefly pressing the symbol key unlocks the boot lid. After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened by pushing the button in the handle located above the number plate.

Pressing and holding the symbol key releases the boot lid (partially opened).

If the boot lid is unlocked or released with the key symbol on the remote control key, then the lid is automatically locked after closing.

You can set a lock delay » page 61.

CAUTION

- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.
- Only operate the remote control when the doors and luggage compartment lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

Note

For vehicles with the anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can additionally also be enabled / disabled when unlocking / locking » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

Opening/closing a door

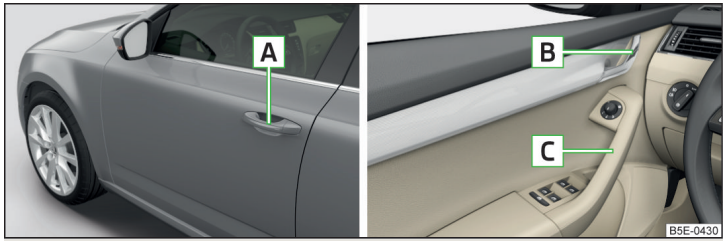

Fig. 35 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 54 first.

Opening from the outside
› Unlock the vehicle.
› Pull door handle A » Fig. 35 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside
› Pull on door opening lever B of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside
› Grab the pull handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

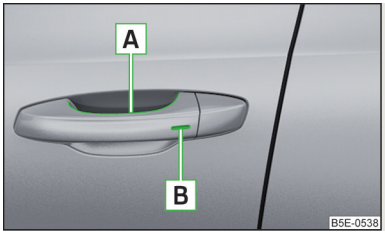

Fig. 36
Sensors in the handle of the front door

Read and observe ! and ! on page 54 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Sensors in the handle of the front door » Fig. 36
A Unlocking sensor
B Locking sensor

Unlocking
› Grasp the door handle of the front door or cover sensor A » Fig. 36with the palm of your hand.» !

Locking
› Touch the sensor B » Fig. 36 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid
› Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 40 *on page 61*.

If the vehicle is locked via sensor B, it is not possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via sensor A - protection against accidental unlocking.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If the key with which the vehicle has been locked is left in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again. If no door is opened within approximately 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again. ▸

If the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the boot, the boot lid is released (partially opened). The turn-signal lights flash four times as an indication that the boot lid has been released again. The boot lid **remains released**(partially opened). The other doors remain locked.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key in vehicle.**

S **KEY IN VEHICLE**

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

System fault

If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Keyless access system faulty.**

S **KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY**

CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can impair the function of the grip sensor.
- There is no automatic locking after leaving the car.
- The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

Safe securing system

Read and observe and on page 54 first.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle can not be opened from the inside any more.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!**

S **CHECK SAFELOCK**

Switching off

The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› By locking twice within 2 seconds.
› By disabling the interior monitoring » page 60, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching on

Safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked.

Switch-off display

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Switch-on display

The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe and on page 54 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually » *owner's manual of Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Opening a single door

This function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlock all doors

This function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Automatic locking/unlocking

All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. It is also possible to unlock the vehicle by pressing the central locking button.

Note

For some countries with right-hand steering, the single-door opening function is set at the factory.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button

Fig. 37
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 54 first.

When the vehicle has not been locked from outside, the » Fig. 37 button can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking » Fig. 37

If the symbol in the button is lit, the vehicle is locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.
› Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- If the Safelock system is switched on » page 57, the door opening levers and the central locking buttons do not operate.

CAUTION

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Child safety lock

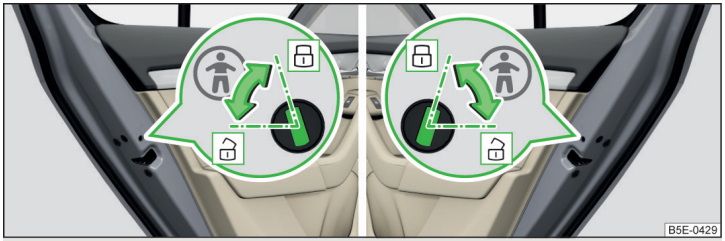

Fig. 38 **Rear door: left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 54 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the child safety lock on and off » Fig. 38

Switching on
Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 54 first.

Failure of the central locking

In the event of a failure of the central locking, only the driver's door can be locked or unlocked using the key. The other doors and the boot lid can be emergency locked or unlocked.
› Unlocking / locking » page 55 for vehicles without remote control.
› Unlocking / locking for vehicles with remote control » page 225 .
› Emergency locking of the door » page 226.
› Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid » page 226.

Displaying an error
If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Discharged battery in the remote control key
If the red indicator light B » Fig. 34 *on page 55* does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty.

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Change the key battery!**
S **KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE**

Replace the battery » page 224.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people trying to break into the vehicle.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

Triggering the alarm
The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.

› Opening the bonnet.
› Opening the boot lid.
› Opening the doors.
› Manipulation of the ignition lock.
› Towing the vehicle » page 60.
› Movement in the vehicle » page 60.
› Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
› Uncoupling the trailer » page 174, *Attaching and detaching trailers*.

If the driver's door of a vehicle with a remote control is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm
The alarm is turned off by pressing the button on the remote control key or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

Activating
The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 45 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Interior monitor and towing protection

Fig. 39
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating
The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button OFF » Fig. 39 on the B column of the driver's side.

The illumination of the symbol OFF in the button changes from red to orange.

› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION
- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – risk of injury!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

i Note
The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing

Fig. 40 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening/closing boot lid » Fig. 40

1 Unlocking the door
2 Opening the flap
3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After activation of delayed locking, the boot lid can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

! CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol button on the remote control key.

Electric boot lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The tailgate can be electrically operated and also manually if necessary » !.

Force limiter

The electric luggage compartment lid (hereinafter referred to only as a lid) is equipped with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation

When the lid is actuated manually, it must be closed slowly. It must be ensured that when pressing the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo » !.

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not attempt to close the lid manually during an electrical closing process - there is a risk of damaging the electric lid operation system.

CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operating description

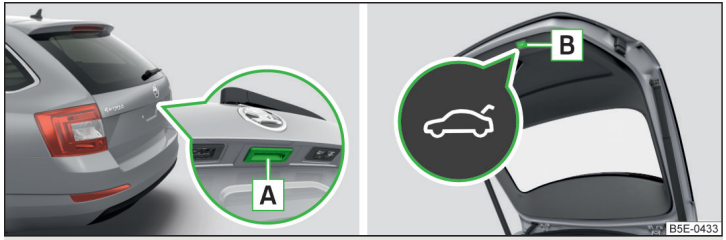

Fig. 41 **Lid operation**

Fig. 42 **Button for the flap operation / operation areas**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 61 first.

Control elements

› Symbol button on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
› Button in handle A on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 41.
› Button B on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 41.
› Button C in the centre console » Fig. 42.

Operating areas

The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 42. The end positions of the lid - fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened - differ as well.

The range of the area 3 changes depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » page 63.

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area 2, the area 3 is not active. The range of the area 2 changes depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description

☑ Feasible action
☐ Non-feasible action
⬑ Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle A

Action	Closed Lid	Area » Fig. 42			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	⬑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	⬑	☑	☑

The operation of the lid using the handle A is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button B

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☐	☑	⬑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	⬑	☑	☑

Operating the lid with the button B is only possible when the lid is open.

Lid operation with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C

Action	Closed Lid	Area			Open Lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☑	☑	☑	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☑	☑	☑	☐
Closing	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.

Operating the lid with the button C does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button on the remote control key and the button C does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals

Read and observe and on page 61 first.

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Importance
Interrupted tone	Open (using the button on the remote control key or the button C » Fig. 42 *on page 62*) Automatic closing of the lid » page 61, in section *Introduction*
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position

Read and observe and on page 61 first.

Adjusting

› Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 41 *on page 62* for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

› Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 41 *on page 62* for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.
› When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
› For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 61 first.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid.

Activation means closing the lid slowly by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 226
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 62 Press handle A » Fig. 41 *on page 62* and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 65. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 183, *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 65.
- When leaving the locked vehicle make sure that the windows are closed at all times.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

- After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. After the driver's or front passenger's door has been opened, the windows can only be operated by using button A » Fig. 43 *on page 64*.
- When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.
- The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Open/close windows

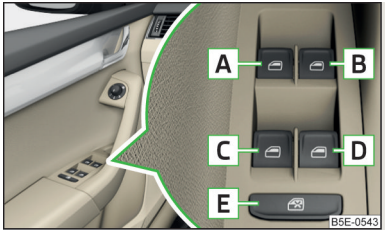

Fig. 43
Power window buttons

Read and observe ! and ! on page 64 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

Power window buttons » Fig. 43

A Left front door
B Right front door
C Left rear door
D Left rear door:
E Disable/enable the buttons in the rear doors

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Disable/enable the buttons in the rear doors

› Press button E » Fig. 43.

When the buttons in the rear doors are disabled, the warning light in button E illuminates.

WARNING

If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that the buttons in the rear doors be disabled with button E for safety reasons.

Opening/closing the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

Fig. 44
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 64 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the **down** button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Closing

› Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the **up** button as far as the stop.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

Force limit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 64 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 64 first.

The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.

Settings the window convenience operation » *Infotainment owner's manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.
› Hold button A » Fig. 43 *on page 64* in the opening position.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› Hold button A » Fig. 43 *on page 64* in the closing position.
› With the KESSY system, hold a finger on sensor B » Fig. 36 *on page 56*.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's lock is only possible within 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the key or the respective button is released.

Operational faults

Read and observe ! and ! on page 64 first.

The electric window levers do not work if the vehicle battery has been disconnected and connected again while a window was open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 1 second, and keep it pressed down.

Mechanical windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windows can be operated mechanically by means of the handle attached to the respective door panel.

! WARNING

The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all remove the ice » page 183, *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the window lift. Otherwise, the window sealing and the window lift mechanism could be damaged.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

i Note

Always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle when driving. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and wind noise may also occur at certain speeds.

Opening/closing windows

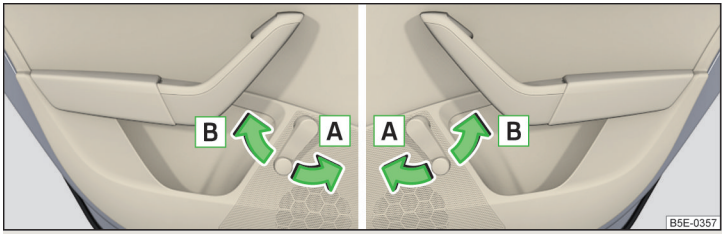

Fig. 45 **Window operation: left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

Only one window can be operated mechanically at any time.

Opening
Turn the handle in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 45.

Closing
Turn the handle in the direction of arrow B » Fig. 45.

Panorama sliding-/tilting roof - Version 1

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION
Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

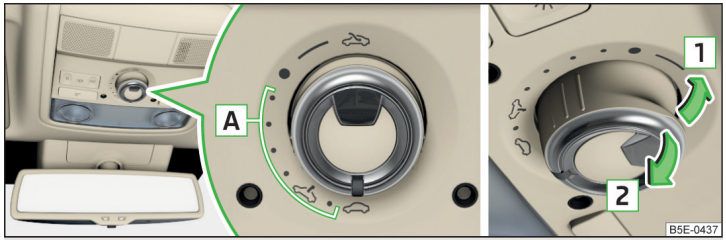

Fig. 46 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The sun roof can be operated with the rotary switch.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 46
- Open fully
- A Open partially
- ● Comfort position
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Closing (switch in position)

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Force limiter
The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back by a few centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pulling on the recess in the switch in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 46 until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed.

! WARNING
When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Malfunctions of the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate. The sun roof must be activated.

Activation sequence.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 46 *on page 67* .
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.
› The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.
› Release the lever.

Convenient operation of the sun roof

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or, with the KESSY system, by means of sensor A --» Fig. 36 *on page 56*.

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

› Press and hold symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› With the KESSY system, hold a finger on sensor B » Fig. 36 *on page 56*.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off sensor B when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Roller blind of the sun roof

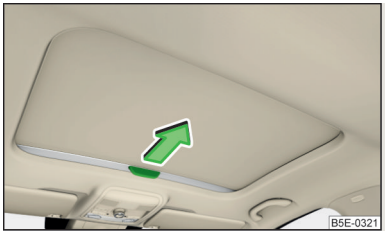

Fig. 47
Open sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The sunshade is manually operated by pulling the handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 47.

WARNING

When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Panorama sliding-/tilting roof - Version 2

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

CAUTION

Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

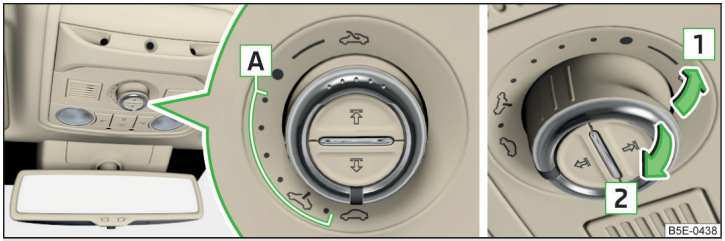

Fig. 48 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The sun roof can be operated with the rotary switch.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 48

- Open fully
- A Open partially
- ● Comfort position
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Closing (switch in position)

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back by a few centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pulling on the recess in the switch in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 48 until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed.

! WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Malfunctions of the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate correctly. The sun roof must be activated.

Activation sequence.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 48 *on page 69* .
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.
› The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.
› Release the lever.

Opening and closing the sun roof

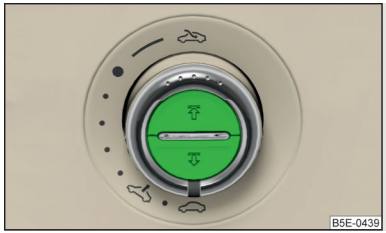

Fig. 49
Operation of the sun blinds

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The sliding sun blind (hereinafter only referred to as a sun screen) can be opened or closed using the buttons.

Operation of the sun screen » Fig. 49

- Opening
- Closing

The sun screen is fully opened or closed by briefly pressing the button. The movement of the sun screen can be stopped by briefly pressing any button.

Pressing and holding the button opens or closes the sun screen to the desired position. By releasing the button, the opening or closing operation is stopped.

WARNING

When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Malfunctions of the sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sunshade will not operate correctly. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 49 *on page 69* .
› Press the button and hold down.
› The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.
› Release the button.

Convenient operation of the sun roof

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking or unlocking using the key or, with the KESSY system, by means of sensor B --» Fig. 36 *on page 56*.

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

› Press and hold symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
› With the KESSY system, hold a finger on sensor B » Fig. 36 *on page 56*.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off sensor B when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.

WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury. The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

Note

The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 50 *on page 71*. The symbols that mark the individual positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » page 184, *Headlight glasses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
- The instruments are also illuminated when the side light, low or high beam light is switched on. The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Operating the lights

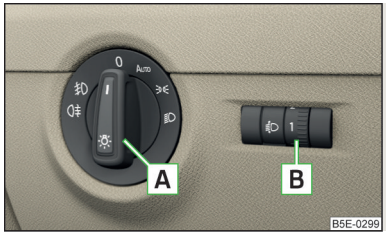

Fig. 50
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch A » Fig. 50 can be moved to the following positions.

Turn switch

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching lights on and off automatically » page 73

Switching on the parking light or parking lights » page 78

Switching on the low beam

Pull switch

Switching on the front fog light » page 76

Switching on the rear fog light » page 76

Headlight beam range regulation

Turning the dial B » Fig. 50 from the position – in 3 means the headlight beam range is gradually adjusted, thereby shortening the beam of light.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

Bi-Xenon headlights

The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- The light switch is in position or AUTO and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically and the status light is lit. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 50 *on page 71*.

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The parking aid is activated.

Activating/deactivating daytime operation on vehicles with Infotainment

The function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment

› Switch off the ignition.

› Pull the turning signal and main beam lever (» Fig. 51 *on page 73*) towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.

› Switch on the ignition.

› Hold the lever in this position for at least. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment

› Switch off the ignition.

› Pull the turning signal and main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push it up and hold it in this position.

› Switch on the ignition.

› Hold the lever in this position for at least. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

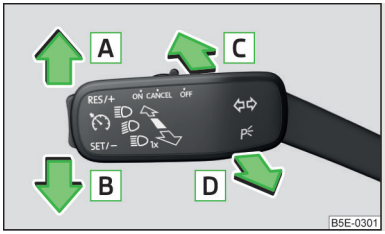

Fig. 51
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 51

- A Switch on right turn signal
- B Switch on left turn signal
- C Switch on high beam/activate high-beam assistant (spring-loaded position)
- D Switch on main beam or headlight flasher (spring-loaded position)

Main beam
The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the headlight is switched on.

On vehicles with Headlight assist, when the lever is put into position C, the Assistant is activated » page 75.

Headlamp flasher
The headlight flasher system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the headlight flasher is switched on.

Flashing
When the left flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the right flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"
If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

The "convenience turn signal" can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

! WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control

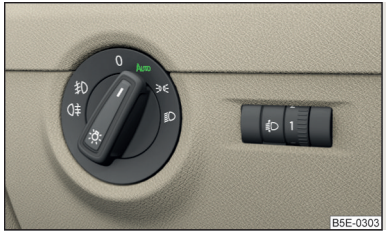

Fig. 52
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 52, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

The on/off switching of the light is controlled by a sensor mounted under the windscreen in the bracket of the inside mirror.

The sensitivity of the light sensor can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving light control during rain
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO** » Fig. 52.
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position 1 or wiping - position 2 or 3 is turned on » page 82, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

The function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

CAUTION
Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The AFS system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle based on the vehicle speed, whether the windscreen wipers are in use, the rear fog lights, and data from Infotainment Navigation.

The AFS system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO** » page 73.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam.

City mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it illuminates the adjacent pavement, crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km/h.

Motorway mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 110 km/h.

Rain mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 50 – 90 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Fog mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver is not dazzled by the reflection of the cone of light by fog in front of the vehicle.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the rear fog light is switched on for a period of time longer than 10 seconds. The mode is deactivated when the rear fig light is switched off for longer than 5 seconds.

Dynamic cornering lights
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km.h and in all AFS modes.

travel mode ("tourist light")
This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When this mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

This mode can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

WARNING
If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Note
If the Eco driving mode is selected, the AFS system is deactivated » page 160.

High Beam assistant

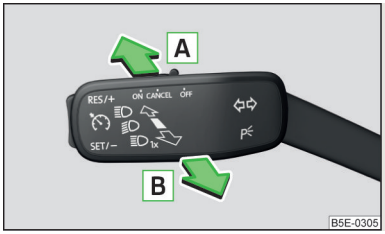

Fig. 53
Operating lever: Headlight assist

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The Headlight assist switches the headlights on/off automatically depending on the environmental conditions.

The headlight is regulated based on data gathered by the camera attached between the windscreen and interior mirror.

The function of high beam assist can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The headlight can switch on automatically at speeds above 60 km/h or 40 km/h[1]. The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

When the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, warning light is lit in the instrument cluster.

Activating

› Turn the light switch to the **AUTO** » Fig. 52 *on page 73* position.
› Place the lever in position **A** (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 53.

The warning icon for the activated headlight assistant appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Deactivating

› If the headlight **is** currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **B** (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 53.
› If the headlight is **not** currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **A** (the headlight switches on) followed by position **B**.

If you want to **reactivate** the Assist, put the lever back into position **A**.

The Assist can also be deactivated when the light switch is turned from position **AUTO** to another position.

Manually switching on the headlights

If the headlight is **not** switched on automatically, it can be switched on manually - put the lever into position **A**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon goes out.

Manually switching off the headlights

If the headlight is **switched on** automatically, it can be switched off manually - put the lever into position **B**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon goes out.

Information message

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M Fault: Light Assist
S LIGHT ASSIST FAULT

Seek help from a specialist garage.

M Light Assist: clean the windscreen!
S WINDSCREEN PLEASE CLEAN

Check for any obstacles on the windscreen in the viewing area of the camera.

! WARNING

Headlight assist only functions as a support and does not relieve the driver of his or her responsibility to check the headlights and low beam and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the light conditions. Manual operation may be required in the following situations.
- When visibility is poor (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- The oncoming traffic is partially blocked on roads or motorways.
- Passing poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
- Driving around "sharp" curves.
- Driving on sharp slopes up/large inclines.
- Driving through poorly-lit locations.
- Driving over highly reflective surfaces.

[1] Only valid for some countries.

WARNING (Continued)

- The windscreen around the camera is dirty, iced up, misted up, or covered by stickers.
- Near the camera lens there is a light source, such as the screen of an external navigation system.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the camera on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Fog lights

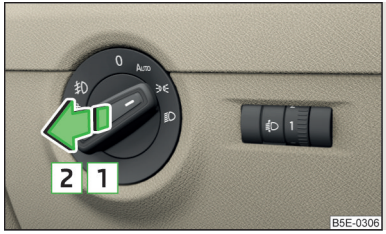

Fig. 54
Light switch: Turn on front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, ≡D or ≡D« » Fig. 54.
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light ≡D lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 34.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The CORNER function improves illumination of the vehicle surroundings when turning, parking and the like, by switching on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle.

The CORNER **function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.**

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** or ≡D ≡D« » Fig. 54 *on page 76*.
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light ≡D lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 34.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the only possible setting.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

COMING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time after leaving the vehicle.

LEAVING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time when approaching the vehicle.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 52 *on page 73*.
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The function is switched on (the driver's door is opened/the car is unlocked via the remote control).

The function switches on the following light, depending on the equipment fitted.

- › Parking lights
- › Low beam
- › Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors
- › Licence plate light

Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted in the bracket of the interior mirror.

COMING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically when you open the driver's door on (within 60 seconds of turning off the ignition).

The light **turns off** 10 seconds after closing all the doors and the boot lid or after the pre-set time has expired.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light **turns on** automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light **turns off** after 10 seconds or after a pre-set time or after the vehicle is locked.

Enabling / disabling and setting function

The functions and setting of the lighting duration can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

! CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system

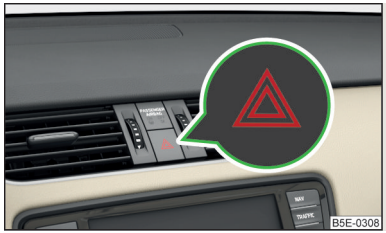

Fig. 55
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

Switching on/off

› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 55.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has to be parked on the roadside, due to a fault for example.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The parking light is provided for a temporary lighting of the parked vehicle.

Parking light P switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Place the control lever into position A or B as far as it can go » Fig. 51 *on page 73* - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 50 *on page 71* and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

CAUTION

Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded, especially over short distances.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 71 first.

The low beam is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), asymmetric headlight adjustment can dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by setting the travel mode in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Note

With the ignition off, the light turns off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Front interior light

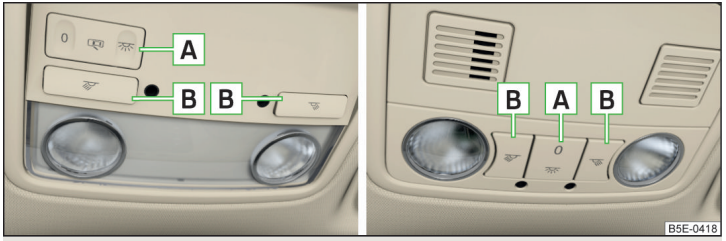

Fig. 56 **Operation of the front light: Variant 1/variant 2**

Positions of rocker switch A . » Fig. 56

Switching on
Control with the door contact switch (middle position)
0 Switching off

There is no icon available for the center position (operation with the door contact switch) in Version 2.

Switch for reading lamp B » Fig. 56

- Switching left reading lamp on/off
- Switching right reading lamp on/off

Conditions for operating the light with the door contact switch - setting

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

› The vehicle is unlocked.
› One of the doors is opened.
› The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

› The vehicle is locked.
› The ignition is switched on.
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting that illuminate the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. At the same time (with parking lights and the ignition switched on), the door handle illumination is turned on.

Rear interior lights

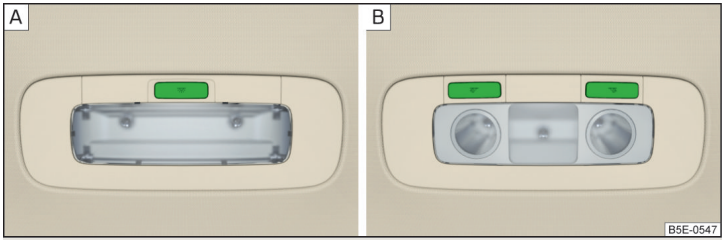

Fig. 57 **Rear interior lights: Variant 1/variant 2**

Fig. 58
Rear interior lights: Variant 3

Switch for rear lights (variant 1) » Fig. 57- A

- Switching on/off

Switch for rear lights (variant 2) » Fig. 57- B

- Switching left reading lamp on/off
- Switching right reading lamp on/off

The rear interior lights - variant 1/variant 2 is operated together with the front interior lights » page 78.

Positions of the lens of the rear lights (variant 3) » Fig. 58

- Switching on
- Operate using the door contact switch (middle position)[1)]
- Switching off

Front door warning light

Fig. 59
Front door warning light

The warning light » Fig. 59 turns on when the front door is opened.

The warning light turns off when the front door is closed.

[1)] In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 78.

There is a reflector installed here on some vehicles instead.

Entry space lighting

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out about 30 seconds after the doors are closed or if the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater

Fig. 60 **Buttons for the front and rear window heater: manual air conditioning, heating/Climatronic**

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

Buttons for the heater in the centre console » Fig. 60

- Switching the rear window heater on/off
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside or below the button.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

If the heating of the motor is switched off with the heating turned on and then started again within 15 minutes again, the heating is continued. The start of the time limit for the Auto Off is counted before switching off the engine already from switching on the heating.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 203, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light within or below the button flashes, the radiator will not work because of the low state of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *vehicle settings*.

Sun visors in the front

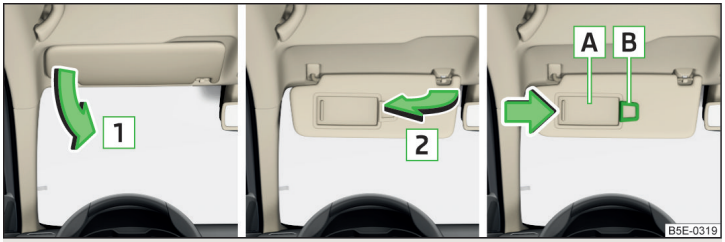

Fig. 61 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and Park Memo Holder**

The sun visors protect you from the blazing sun.

Operation and description of the sun shade » Fig. 61

1 Fold down the cover
2 Swivel cover towards the door
A Make-up mirror, the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow
B Parking ticket holder

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

Sun screen

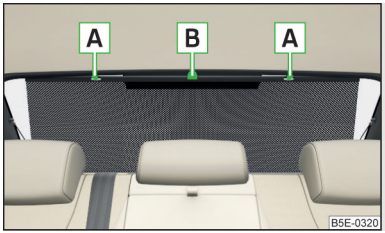

Fig. 62
Sun screen

The sunshade protects against the blazing sun.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Extending

› Pull the sun screen on the handle B » Fig. 62and hang it in the holder A.

Retracting

› Remove the sun shade from the holders A and hold it on handle B » Fig. 62so that it can slowly roll up into the housing without being damaged.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The wiper and washer system provide a good view through the windscreen or rear window.

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 195.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 227.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window washer fluid could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the pane.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint on the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- To avoid streaking, the wiper blades must be kept clean » page 185.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

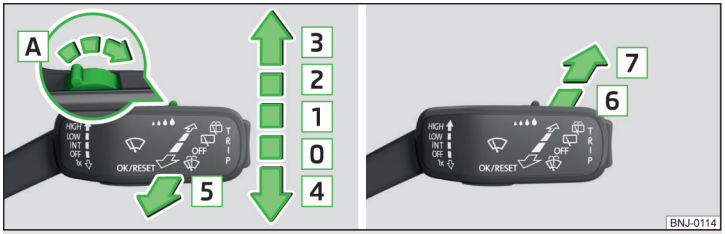

Fig. 63 **Operation of the windscreen wipers and washer: front/rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

Lever positions

0	OFF	Wipers off
1	,,,,	Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain (depending on the equipment configuration)
2	LOW	Slow windscreen wiping
3	HIGH	Rapid windscreen wiping
4	1x	Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » page 227, (spring-loaded position)
5		Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
6		Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
7		Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
A	,,,,	Switches for setting: the desired pause between the individual wiper strokes/the speed of wiping in rain (operating lever in position 1)

Periodic windscreen wiping ,,,,
The wiping intervals are also speed-dependent.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain ,,,,
The wiping intervals are controlled depending on the rain intensity.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Automatic wiping/washing for the windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic wiping/washing for the rear window
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position 6.**

Automatic rear window wiping
If the lever is in position 2 or 3 » Fig. 63, the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position 1) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper
If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

› Switch on the windscreen wipers.
› Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 227.

Note
- If the operating lever is in the position 2 or 3 and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is switched to a lower wiping level. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
- The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting 5 » Fig. 63 *on page 82*), when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should manually remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example after refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 184, *Headlight glasses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION
Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Note
The headlamp cleaning system works with an ambient temperature of about -12 ° C to + 39 ° C.

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

Interior mirror

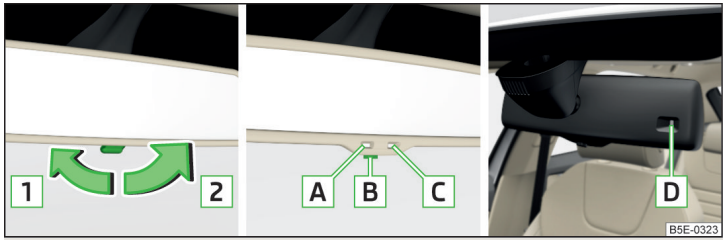

Fig. 64 **Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-dimming/light sensor**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Mirror with manual dimming » Fig. 64

1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 64

A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
C Light sensor
D Light sensor on the back of the mirror

Mirror with automatic dimming

If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the interior mirror » !.

WARNING

The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

CAUTION

The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not impaired, e.g. by the rear sun roller blind.

Note

If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.

Exterior mirrors

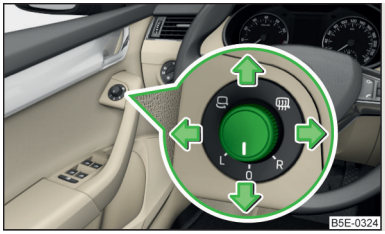

Fig. 65
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjust the left mirror
R Adjust the right mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
Mirror heater
Folding in the exterior mirrors

Adjust the position
The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 65.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Synchronous adjustment of the mirror
› Activating the synchronous adjustment of the mirrors in Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.
› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

Fold in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob
It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 50 km/h.

The mirrors are extended to the driving position by turning the rotary knob from position to a new position.

Automatically folding in and folding back both exterior mirrors
The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position.

The exterior mirrors are folded out automatically after unlocking the vehicle in the driving position.

Folding in both mirrors can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Mirror with automatic dimming
The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 84.

Memory function for mirrors
Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position, » page 89, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 89, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Fold in passenger's mirror
Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The passenger-side mirror can tilt down to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

The mirror will be folded in automatically if the following conditions are met.
✓ The function is deactivated in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The mirror setting has been previously stored, » page 89, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 89, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

! WARNING
Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION

▪ Never adjust exterior mirrors with the fold-in function by hand - risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
▪ When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Note

▪ The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
▪ If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and head restraints

Seats and head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following:
› Reaching the controls safely and quickly,
› A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
› **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

▪ Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
▪ Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
▪ The electric front seat adjustment is also functional when the ignition is turned off (even with the ignition key removed). Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
▪ Never carry more people than there are number of seats in the vehicle.
▪ Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except objects (e.g. child safety seat) provided for this purpose – risk of accident!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

Manually adjusting seats

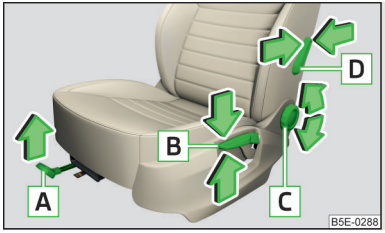

Fig. 66
Control elements at the seat

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 66

A Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
B Adjusting height of seat[1)]
C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
D Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 66 in the direction of the arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat[1)]

› Again push or pull the lever B » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› The seat back release (do not lean on).
› Push the lever C » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting lumbar support

› Push the lever D » Fig. 66 in the direction of one of the arrow.

Adjusting the front seats electronically

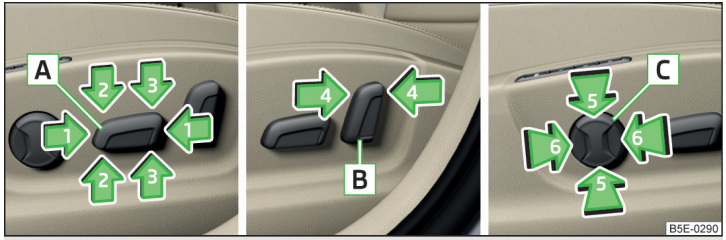

Fig. 67 **Control elements at the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 67

A seat adjustment
B Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
C Adjusting lumbar support

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **1** » Fig. 67.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **2** » Fig. 67.

Set the height of the seat cushion

› Push the switch A in the direction of one of the arrows **3** » Fig. 67.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Push the switch B in the direction of one of the arrows **4** » Fig. 67 .

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support

› Push the switch C in the region of one of the arrows**5** » Fig. 67.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support

› Push the switch C in the region of one of the arrows**6** » Fig. 67.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 89 or the remote control key » page 89.

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Head restraints - adjusting height

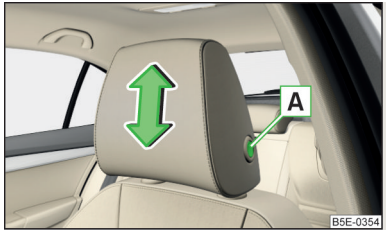

Fig. 68
Front headrests: move up and down

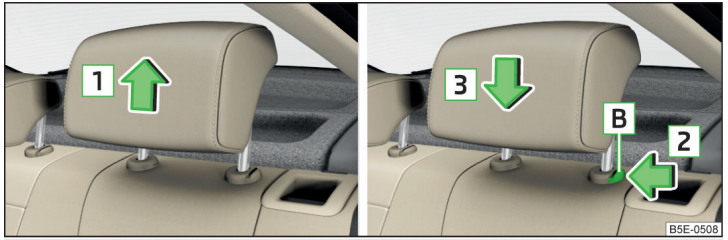

Fig. 69 **Rear headrests: move up and down**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Adjust front support

› Press the locking button A » Fig. 68 and hold and move support in the desired direction.

Adjust rear support

› Grasp the restraint and move **upwards** in the direction of 1 » Fig. 69.

› To move the restraint **down**, press the securing button B in the direction of arrow 2 and hold while at the same time pressing the restraint in the direction of arrow 3.

! WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be correctly set (must not be in the bottom position) - risk of fatal injury!

Note

- The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.
- For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. This headrest can not be adjusted in height.

Headrests - removing and installing

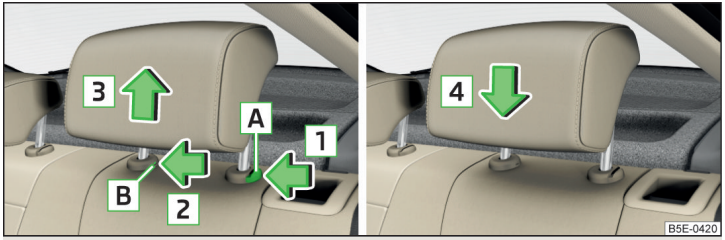

Fig. 70 **Rear headrests: removing/installing**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

Only the real head restraints may be removed or installed.

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 70 , while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the securing button in opening B in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow 3.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 4 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

! WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be installed and adjusted correctly - risk of fatal injury!

Note

For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests can not be removed.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

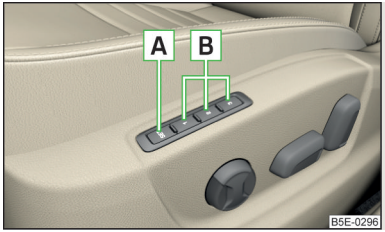

Fig. 71
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons B » Fig. 71 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat to the desired position.
› Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 85.
› Press the button SET A » Fig. 71.
› Within 10 seconds after pressing the SET button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings for reversing

The function of the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface must be enabled in infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 71.
› Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position R or in right-hand drive to the position L » page 85.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 85.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

› **Tap** the desired memory button B » Fig. 71 when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

Or

› **Press down** on the desired memory button B when the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is closed.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat.

Or

› Press the button on the remote control key.

Note

Each time new seat and exterior mirror settings for forward travel are saved, the passenger exterior mirror setting for reverse travel must also be saved again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (afterwards only as function of automatic storage).

This function can also be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*..

Enable automatic storage

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 71 *on page 89*. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

› Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key[1].

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing
The function of the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface must be enabled in infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the rotary knob for the mirrors to the position **R** or in right-hand drive to the position **L** » page 85.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 85.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Disable the function of automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold the SET button A » Fig. 71 *on page 89*. At the same time, press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat.

Or

› Press the button on the remote control key.

[1] The vehicle must be locked and unlocked with the same key to save the seat and exterior mirror position to the key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters

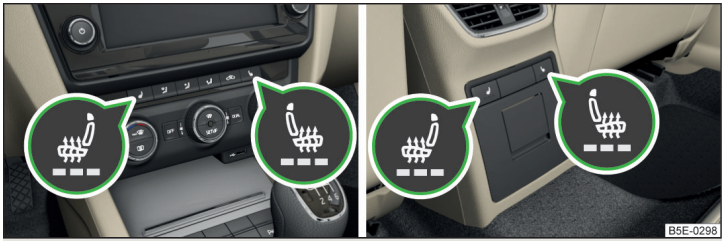

Fig. 72 **Buttons for heating the front seats/rear seats**

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Buttons for the seat heater » Fig. 72
Left seat heating
Right seat heating

Switching on
› Press the corresponding symbol button or » Fig. 72.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is reduced until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath/in the switch.

If the engine is switched off and then turned on again within 10 mins with the driver seat heating switched, then the driver's seat heating is automatically turned on again.

WARNING

If, as a passenger, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heating on the driver's or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heating in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
  - The seats are not occupied by people.
  - Items are fastened or stored items on the seats, such as a child seat, a bag and the like.
  - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » page 187.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 203, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest

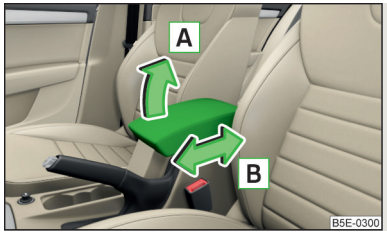

Fig. 73
Adjust armrest

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting the height

› First of all, fold the armrest downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 73 to one of the 4 rest positions.

Move

› Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 73.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 99.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake.

Rear armrest

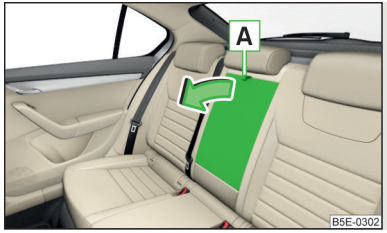

Fig. 74
Fold the armrest forwards

Folding forward

› Pull on the loop A » Fig. 74 and fold the armrest forward in the direction of the arrow.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 96.

Folding front passenger seat

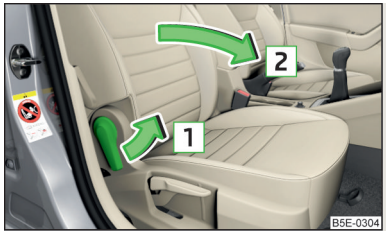

Fig. 75
Folding the front passenger seat forward

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 75.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 75.
› Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 21.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.

WARNING (Continued)

- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs away from between the seat cushion and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Seat backrests

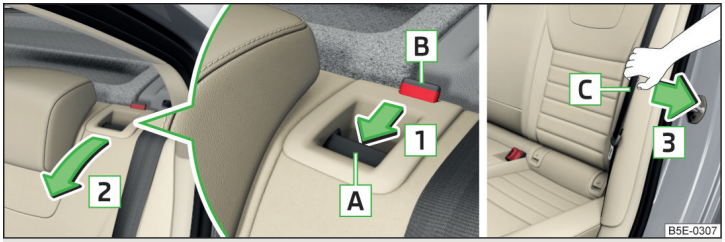

Fig. 76 **Release seat rest and fold forwards/pull belt towards side trim panel**

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can also be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward » !.

Fold down divided seat backrest

› Press the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 76.
› Remove the seat rest in the direction of the arrow 2.

The seat backrests can also be folded forwards from the luggage compartment » page 93, *Rear seat backrests - fold down from the luggage compartment*.

Fold down undivided seat backrest

› Push the release handles A on both sides of the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 1 simultaneously» Fig. 76.
› Fold the backrest in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fold divided seat backrest backwards

› Pull the rear outer seat belt C to the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 76.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob A clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

Fold undivided seat backrest backwards

› Pull the rear outer seat belt C to the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 76.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the release levers A on either side of the seat back click into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pins B on both sides of the seat back are not visible.

! WARNING

▪ The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
▪ The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
▪ If rear seats are occupied, make sure that the respective seat backrests are properly engaged.

! CAUTION

▪ Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.
▪ Store the head restraints that were removed in such a way that they cannot be damaged or soiled.

Rear seat backrests - fold down from the luggage compartment

Fig. 77 **Fold rear seat backrest forwards: Variant 1/variant 2**

The rear seat backrests can also be unlocked and folded forward from the luggage compartment.

There is a lever on the **right** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the right and the middle rear seat backrests.

There is a lever on the **left** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the left rear seat backrest.

› Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 77.

The respective seat rest is unlocked and folded forward if applicable.

! CAUTION

▪ Before folding the seat backrest forward from the luggage compartment, check that there are no objects on the rear seat. When folding the seat backrest forward, they could be damaged or cause damage to the seat backrest and the seat.
▪ On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked.

Rear-seat backrest with long-cargo channel

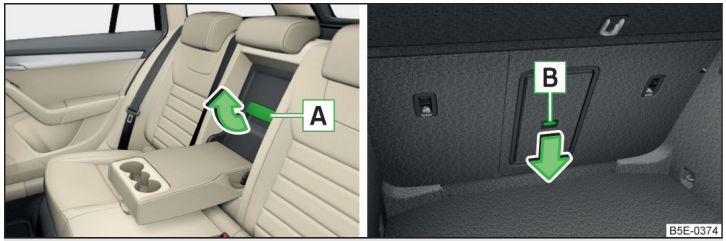

Fig. 78 **Lid handle / release button**

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed.

Opening from the passenger compartment

› Fold the rear armrest dow (not as far as the stop) » page 91.
› Pull the handle A » Fig. 78 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover downwards.

Opening from the boot

› Push the unlock button B » Fig. 78 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

› Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button B » Fig. 78 is not visible from the boot.

WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 102.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder

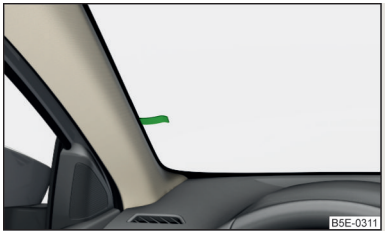

Fig. 79
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 79 is designed e.g. for securing car park tickets.

! WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

Fig. 80
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Opening

› Raise the handle and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 80.

Closing

› Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

stowage compartments in the doors

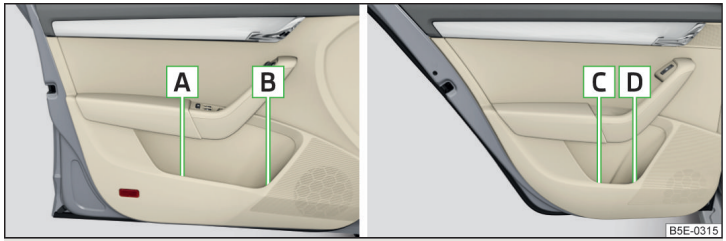

Fig. 81 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 81

A Storage compartment in the front doors
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 litres in the front doors
C Storage compartment in the rear doors
D Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 litres in the rear doors

! WARNING

Do not use the storage compartment A » Fig. 81 of the door pocket to store protruding objects. Otherwise, this could impair the effectiveness of the side airbag.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

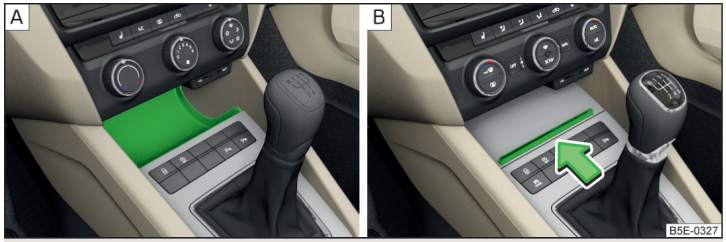

Fig. 82 **Open the open storage compartment / storage compartment**

Fig. 83
Phonebox

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 82

A Open

B Lockable

The storage compartment is provided for storing small items.

The lockable storage compartment contains an induction panel that is connected to the GSM antenna - the Phonebox » Fig. 83.

Open/close

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 82 - B.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Phonebox

When the telephone is inserted into the Phonebox, the telephone signal increases in strength by about 20%. This reduces the level of phone battery discharge and the electromagnetic radiation inside the vehicle.

› Place the telephone in the storage compartment with its back on the induction panel.

The Phonebox cannot be used as an alternative to connecting the telephone with the Infotainment.

! WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!
- For safety reasons, the storage compartment must always be closed when driving.

! CAUTION

- Protective cases or cases around the telephone placed in the storage compartment may interfere with the telephone signal strength.
- Metallic objects such as coins or keys under the telephone can affect the telephone signal strength.

Cup holders

Fig. 84 **Cup holder: front/rear**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Placement of the cup holders » Fig. 84

A In the front centre console
B In the rear armrest

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the drinks holders, as the vehicle occupants could be endangered if sudden braking occurs or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter

Fig. 85
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Using the system

› Press in the button in the cigarette lighter » Fig. 85.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off » !.

WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can case burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12- volt socket for electrical appliances » page 98, *12-Volt power outlet*.

Ashtray

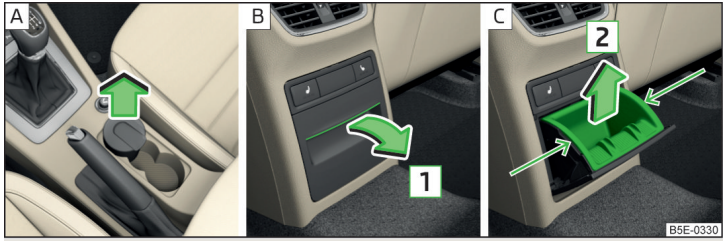

Fig. 86 **Remove front ashtray / open rear ashtray / remove rear ashtray insert**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

› Pull out the ashtray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 86 - A.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

› Pull the upper part of the well and open the ashtray in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 86 - B .
› Grasp the insert in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 86 - C.

The insertion of the insert and closing of the ashtray is carried out in reverse order.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray on the cover – risk of breakage.

12-Volt power outlet

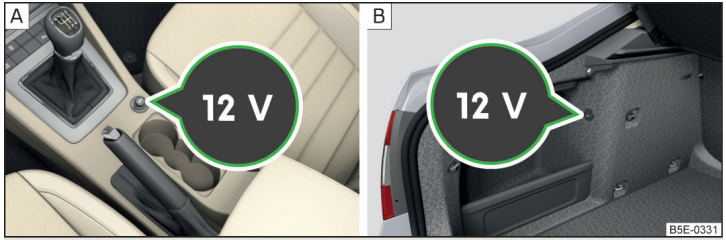

Fig. 87 **12-Volt power socket: in the front centre console/ in the boot**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Installation locations for the 12-volt power sockets » Fig. 87

A In the front centre console

B In the luggage compartment

Use

› Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 87 - A or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 87 - B.

› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The socket also works if the ignition is switched off » !.

WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

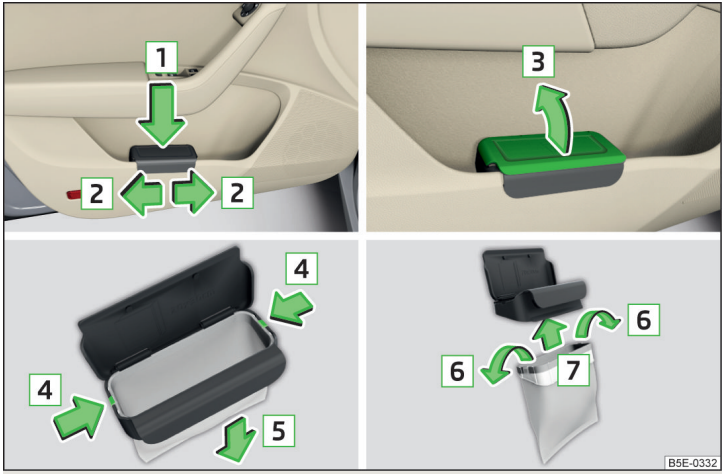

Fig. 88 **Waste container: insert and move/open/replace bag**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors » page 95.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 88.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow 2.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 88.

Open/close waste container

› Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 88.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Push the two catches of the inner frame out of the container body in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 88.
› Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the inside frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

! WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

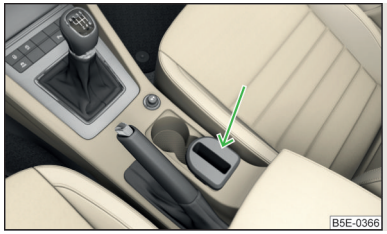

Fig. 89
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

You can use this multimedia holder» Fig. 89 to store a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

! WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment under the front arm rest

Fig. 90
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Opening

› Pull the armrest on the handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 90.

Closing

› Open the arm rest to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 90.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the storage compartment should not be opened to an end stop while driving.

Glasses compartment

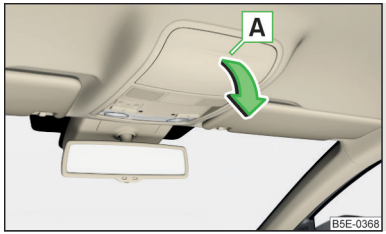

Fig. 91
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Opening

› Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in area A » Fig. 91.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 91 until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting glasses, and otherwise must be kept closed – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Do not place any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - risk of damage.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

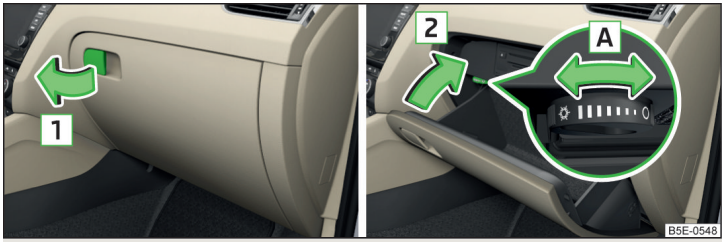

Fig. 92 **Tray open / operating air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Opening

› Pull the cover handle in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 92 and fold down the cover.

Closing

› Swing the flap up opposite to the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 92 until it clicks into place.

Air supply into the storage compartment

› The air supply is opened or closed by turning the rotary switch in the direction of arrow A to the stop » Fig. 92.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

- When the stowage compartment is opened, a light lights up.
- If not using the air supply in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.
- A pen and credit card holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Clothes hook

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats

Fig. 93
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 93 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console

Fig. 94
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

Open/close

› Pull the handle on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 94.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

230-volt socket

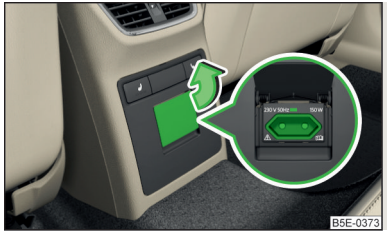

Fig. 95
230-Volt power socket

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The 230-volt socket (hereinafter referred to only as a socket) is provided for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230-volt plug and a total power consumption of up to 150 watts.

The socket is located in the rear centre console.

The socket only works if the ignition is switched on.

Use

› Fold out the lid on the power socket in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 95.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The power socket can only be used when the ignition is switched on » !.

When the plug on the electrical appliance is inserted into the power socket, the child safety lock is released, and the power socket is activated.

Warning light

› Permanent green light: The power socket is activated.
› Flashing red light: The power socket is temporarily deactivated.

The power socket is deactivated automatically when the amperage is too high, the temperature is too high or the battery charge state is too low.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the socket is automatically activated. Then re-activate connected devices which are switched on » !.

! WARNING

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- Improper use can lead to serious injury or fire. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- Safely stow away all connected devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- Do not pour liquids into the power socket – risk of death! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The connected devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – risk of injury!
- Do no insert any conductive objects into the contacts of the power socket, e.g. knitting needs – risk of death!

! CAUTION

- Place the connector on the electrical device into the power socket as far as it can go to create a connection between the contacts.
- If the connector of the electrical device is not inserted fully into the power socket, the child safety lock might release, and the power socket be activated. The electrical device is still not supplied with power.
- The socket is temporarily disabled at engine start-up and the indicator light flashes red. After starting the engine, the power socket is re-activated automatically.
- Do not connect any lamps with neon filaments to the power socket - risk of damaging the lamp.
- A larger current surge may arise in some power supplies (e.g. for notebooks) when connecting them to the power socket- this will automatically deactivate the power socket. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the consumer and connect the power supply to the power socket first, followed by the consumer.
- The connected appliances may behave differently to when connected to the mains.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Removable through-loading bag

Fig. 96 **Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to only as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

Stowing the through-loading bag and skis

› Open the boot lid.

› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 94.
› Place the empty, through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the through-loading bag.

Securing the through-loading bag and skis

› Tighten the strap A on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 96.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap B » Fig. 96.
- The strap A must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap A holds all skis in front of the binding (see also the text on the through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

! CAUTION

- Never fold and stow the through-loading bag when it is wet - risk of damaging the through-loading bag.
- The through-loading bag is designed for the transportation of up to four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the through-loading bag.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or by using the fixing nets » page 104.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light

The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

! WARNING

- Always store transported objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.

WARNING (Continued)

- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be displaced – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The items carried in the luggage compartment must be stored in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres are undertaken – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 11, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

- Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the threads of the following devices.
  - Rear window heater.
  - Rear window with an integrated antenna.
  - Integrated antenna in the rear side windows.
- The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 204.

Fastening elements

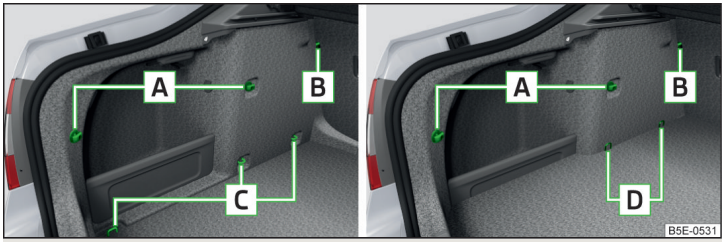

Fig. 97 **Fastening elements: Variant 1/variant 2 (G-TEC)**

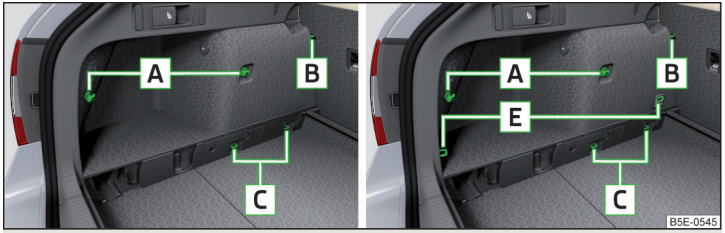

Fig. 98 **Fastening elements: Variant 3/variant 4**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 97 **and** » Fig. 98

- A Fastening elements **only** for fastening fixing nets
- B Fastening elements **only** for fastening fixing nets
- C Lashing eyelets for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
- D Lashing eyelets for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
- E Lashing eyelets for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets

The lashing eyelet B is located behind the folding rear seat backrest .

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes C and E is 3.5 kN (350 kg).
- The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes D is 1.5 kN (150 kg).

Fixing nets

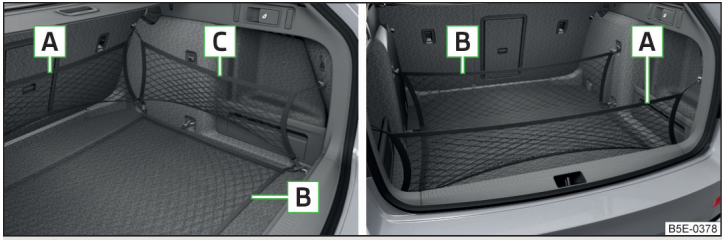

Fig. 99 **Fastening examples for nets**

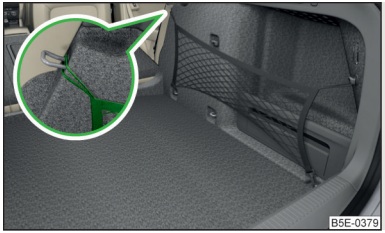

Fig. 100
Fastening example for vertical pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 99

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor and this is in the upper position, then the lashing eyes E » Fig. 98 *on page 104* can be used for attaching the nets.

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.
- For vehicles with lashing eyes D » Fig. 97 *on page 104*, only the following nets can be attached.
  - Horizontal pocket behind the seats.
  - Floor net, which can be attached to the rear fastening elements A » Fig. 97 *on page 104* in the rear area.

Folding double hooks

Fig. 101
Folding double hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The folding double hook » Fig. 101 is used to fasten small items of luggage, e.g. bags.

The folding double hook can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

CAUTION

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hook

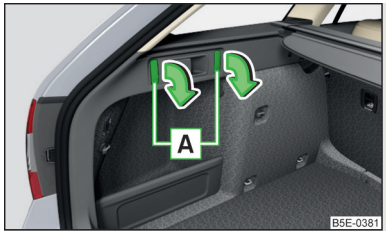

Fig. 102
Fold down hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Foldable hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› Press on the lower portion of the hook A and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 102.

The front foldable hooks are also used to fasten the rear bar of the multifunction pocket » page 110.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Floor covering

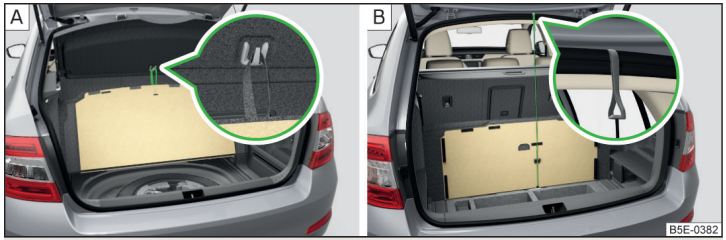

Fig. 103 **Fixing the floor covering: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Fastening options for the flooring » Fig. 103

A With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover

B With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

! CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 115 *on page 111*.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

! CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor » page 110 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

i Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Luggage net

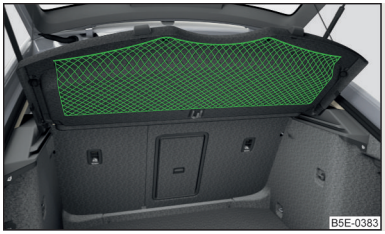

Fig. 104
Luggage net

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 104.

WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Luggage compartment cover

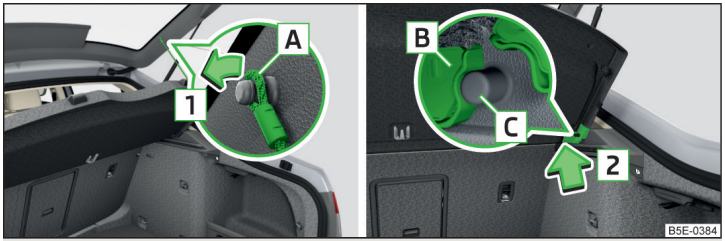

Fig. 105 **Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover**

Fig. 106
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

› Unhook the retaining straps A of the flap in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 105 .
› On the underside of the cover, in the area of the holders, press C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest » Fig. 106.

Installing

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Place the recesses B » Fig. 105 on the cover of the C brackets on the side cover.
› Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock in the holders.
› Insert the retaining bands A opposite to the direction of arrow 1 on the boot lid.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The recesses in the cover B » Fig. 105 must lock in the holders in the side trim panel C.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the opened position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.

Note

If the support straps A » Fig. 105 are attached to the boot, then the boot cover will rise as well when the luggage compartment is opened.

Retractable luggage compartment cover

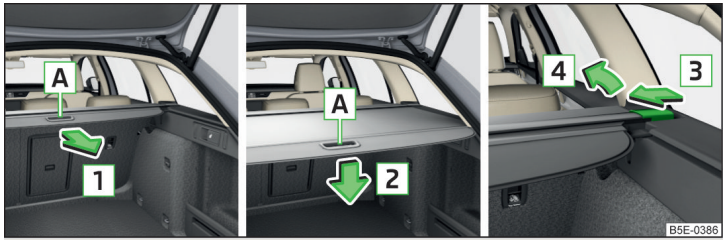

Fig. 107 **Pull out and roll-up luggage compartment cover**

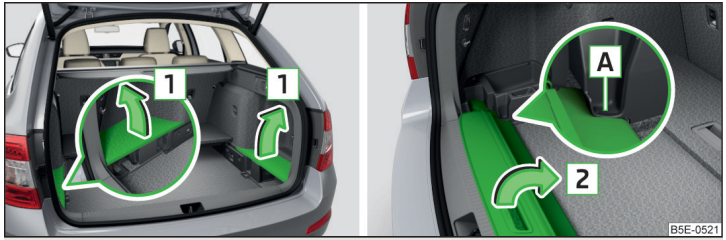

Fig. 108 **Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment/stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

Extending

› Grasp the cover on the handle A » Fig. 107 and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it clicks.

Retracting

› Push the cover in the area of the handle A » Fig. 107 in the direction of the arrow 2.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled-up luggage compartment cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

› Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 107 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 4.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Stowing the roll-up luggage compartment cover

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 111.
› Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 108.
› Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » Fig. 107.
› Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim D » Fig. 108 on the left.
› Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow 2 » !.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 111.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover. There is the danger of injuries during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

! CAUTION

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof rack **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

Storage compartment with cargo element

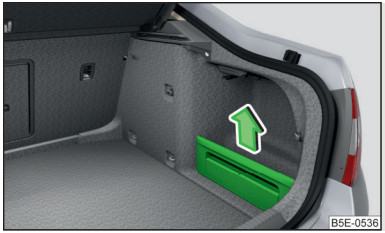

Fig. 109
Remove storage compartment

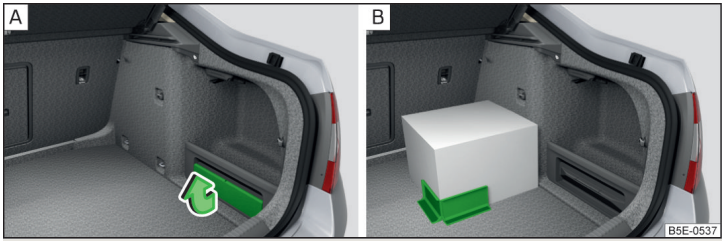

Fig. 110 **Removing cargo element/example on how to mount the load by means of the cargo element**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The storage compartment with cargo element may be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, depending on the equipment variant.

Remove the storage compartment cover

› Remove the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 109.

Secure load

› Remove the cargo element (part of the storage compartment cover) in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 110- A.
› Secure the cargo element onto the floor of the luggage compartment with Velcro » Fig. 110 - B.

! CAUTION

- The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.
- The cargo element is designed for attaching objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

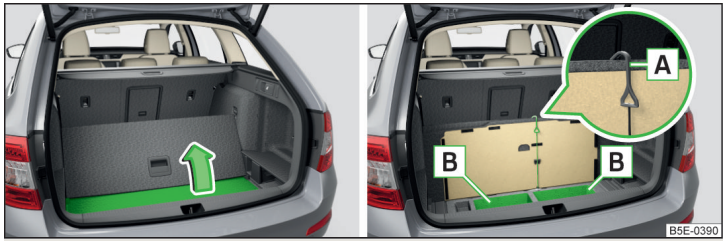

Fig. 111 **Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The storage compartments are located under the floor covering of the luggage compartment in vehicles without a spare wheel.

Use

› Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 112.
› Remove the fog floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 111.
› Fix the hook A to the top edge of the variable loading floor.

It is possible also to store objects with larger heights in the storage compartments B, thereby using the maximum height of the luggage compartment.

! CAUTION

- The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.
- Do not stored any sharp objects in the storage compartments.
- Do not load the storage compartments at specific points or they may be damaged.
- Place the objects carefully into the storage compartments to avoid damage to the compartments.

Multi-function pocket

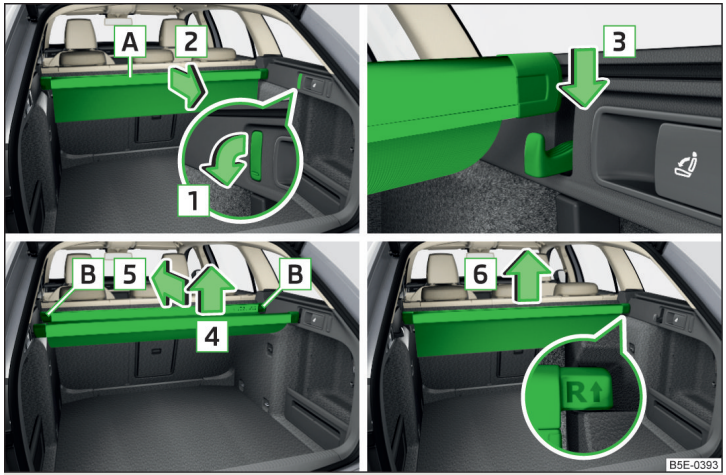

Fig. 112 **Pull out / insert / push in / remove multi-function pocket**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

The multifunction box under the roll-up luggage compartment cover is provided for the storage of clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

Extending

› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 112.
› Grasp the rear bar A with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction 2.
› Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow 3 all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

› Remove the rear bar from the hook in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 112.
› Push in the multi-function pocket in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends B.

› The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow 1.

Removing/inserting

› Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 108.
› Remove the multi-function pocket from the recesses in the direction of the arrow 6 » Fig. 112.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

› When inserting, push the end of the bar marked R ↑ into the right receptacle and the end of the bar marked ↑ L into the left receptacle. The arrows should be pointing forward.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 103 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » page 111.

Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects such as the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 108, the roof cross bars » page 115 etc.

Positions of the variable loading floor

Fig. 113 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**

Fig. 114 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 113.
› Lift the variable loading floor about 20 cm, pull it to yourself and raise it in the direction of the arrow 1 to the level of the roll-up luggage compartment cover until it clicks.

After an audible click, the variable loading floor can be stowed in the upper position by pushing it forward.

The room under the variable loading floor can be used to store away objects.

Set into the lower position

› Check that there are no objects in the space under the variable loading floor.
› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 114.
› Lift the variable loading floor about 10 cm in the direction of the arrow 2 and pull it back in the direction of the arrow 3.

The variable loading floor moves automatically to the lower position where it can be stored by pressing it forward.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions » page 111 or used for dividing the luggage compartment » page 112.

Fold up variable loading floor

Fig. 115 **Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position**

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both the lower and the upper position.

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 115 and lift in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Dividing the luggage compartment

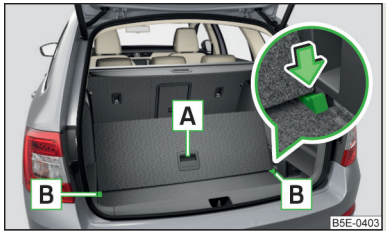

Fig. 116
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

Read and observe ! on page 110 first.

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor in the lower and upper position.

› Raise the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 116.
› Push the rear edge of the variable loading floor into the grooves B in the direction of the arrow.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves B.

Net partition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- Be convinced that the crossbar of the net partition is firmly seated in the recesses E » Fig. 118 *on page 112*.
- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

Using the net partition

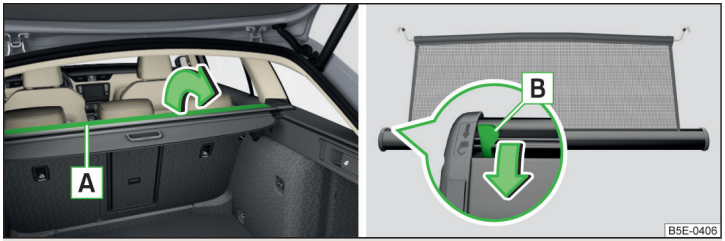

Fig. 117 **Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever**

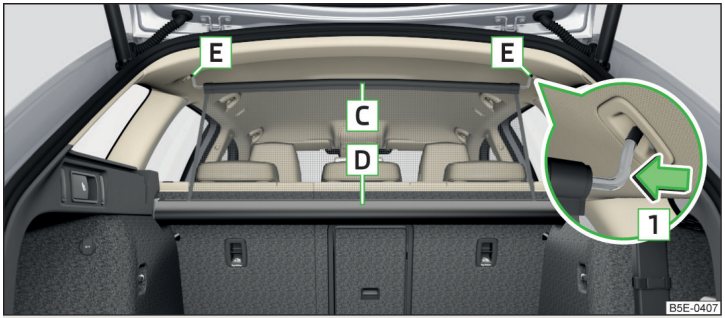

Fig. 118 **Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state**

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

The net partition can either be installed behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Removing the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 117.
› Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar C from the housing D » Fig. 118.
› Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles E.

› On the other side, press on the crossbar and hook it into the appropriate receptacle E.

If the crossbar is hooked into the receptacle E to the left for example, then press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 1 and insert into the receptacle E to the right.

› Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 117.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 117.
› Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles E, first on one side, then on the other side » Fig. 118.
› **Hold** the crossbar C in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing D without being damaged.
› Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 117.

Installing and removing the net partition **behind the rear seats** is carried out in a similar way as behind the rear seats. Before pulling out the net partition, the rear seats are to be folded forwards. After rolling the net partition, the rear seats are to be folded back » page 92.

CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 117.

Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll-up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 108.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

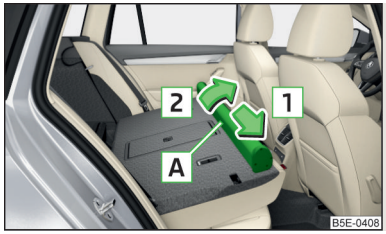

Fig. 119
Removing the net partition housing

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

Removing

› Fold the rear seats forward » page 92.
› Open the rear right door » page 56.
› Push the net partition housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 119.

Installing

› Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
› Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 119 as far as the stop.
› Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 92.

Roof rack

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The items which you transport on the roof rack must be reliably attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- When dealing with roof rack systems, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On models fitted with a sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

fixing points for base support

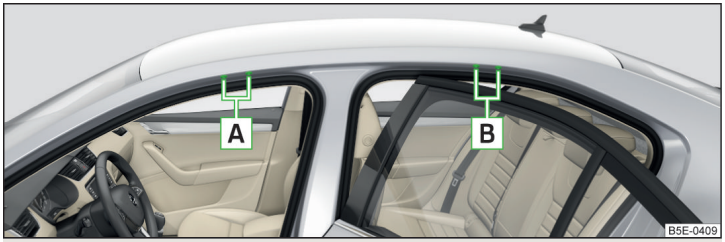

Fig. 120 **Attachment points**

Read and observe and on page 114 first.

Installation location of the attachment points for base support » Fig. 120

A Front attachment points
B Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Stowing the roof rack

Fig. 121 **Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment/stow the roof rack**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 111.
› Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 121.
› Remove the key from the roof rack » !.

The removed key can be stowed in recess C.

› Insert the front roof rack A into the front recesses of the side trim.
› Insert the rear roof rack B into the rear recesses of the side trim.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 111.

! CAUTION

▪ Before stowing the roof rack, pull out the key from the carrier, otherwise it could be damaged.
▪ If you want to stow the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

Roof load

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 117.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting.
- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
  - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
  - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
  - Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Note

The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.

Air outlet vents

Fig. 122 **Air vents at the front**

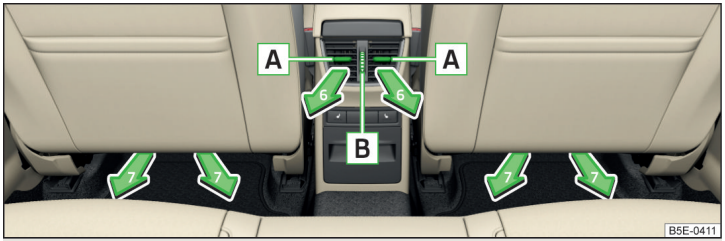

Fig. 123 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe and on page 116 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 122 and **6** » Fig. 123 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Changing the direction of air flow

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster A » Fig. 122 or » Fig. 123 upward or downward.
› To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A » Fig. 122 or » Fig. 123 to the left or right.

Opening

› Turn regulator B » Fig. 122 or » Fig. 123upwards.

Closing

› Turn regulator B » Fig. 122 or » Fig. 123downwards.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 122 and » Fig. 123
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6
	4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 5, 6, 7

Note

To ensure that the heating and air conditioning systems are able to work properly, do not cover the air outlet vents.

Air distribution control

Read and observe and on page 116 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heating and air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

To **switch on** the recirculated air mode, press symbol button. The warning light below the button lights up.

To **switch off** the recirculated air mode, press symbol button. The warning light below the button goes out.

The air recirculation mode is turned off by turning the air distribution control C to position » Fig. 124 *on page 118* or » Fig. 125 *on page 119*.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

To **switch on** the recirculated air mode, press symbol button. The warning light below the button lights up.

To **switch off** the recirculated air mode, press symbol button again (the warning light below the button goes out) or press button **AUTO**.

Automatic activation/deactivation of the air recirculation
Climatronic may have an air quality sensor for the detection of the pollutant concentration in the sucked-in air.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, the recirculated air mode will be switched on automatically.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

The automatic activation/deactivation of the air recirculation can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings* .

WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

The automatic activation/deactivation of the air recirculation with Climatronic only works if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Heating

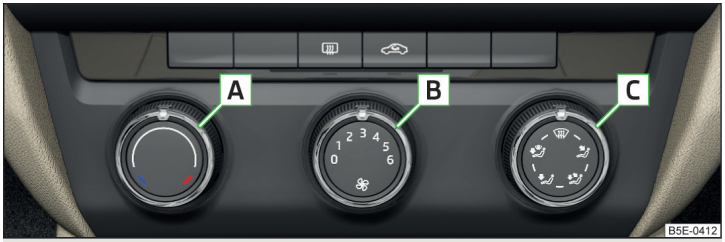

Fig. 124 **Heating Controls**

Read and observe and on page 116 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the rotary knob or pressing the respective button. When the function is activated, the warning light below the button lights up.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 124

A Set temperature
- Reduce temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower speed (level 0: fan off, stage 6: highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 116
- Air flow over the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow into the footwell and to the body (warmer air directed to the footwell than to the body)
- Air flow into the footwell
- Airflow over the windows and into the footwell

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 80

Switch recirculated air on/off » page 117

Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

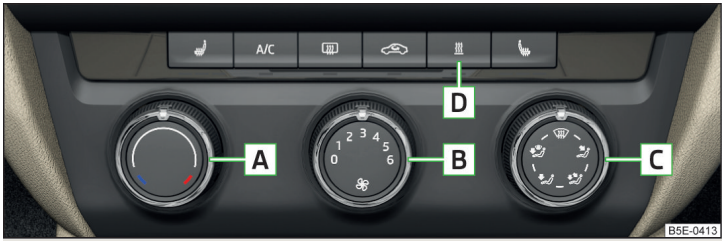

Fig. 125 **Controls of the air conditioning**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the rotary knob or pressing the respective button. When the function is activated, the warning light below the button lights up.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 125

A Set temperature
- Reduce temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower speed (level 0: fan off, stage 6: highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 116
- Air flow over the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow into the footwell and to the body (warmer air directed to the footwell than to the body)
- Air flow into the footwell
- Airflow over the windows and into the footwell

D Depending on equipment fitted:
- Switching on/off aux. heating (standard heating) on/off » page 122
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 80

Operate the seat heater on the front left seat » page 90

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 80

Switch recirculated air on/off » page 117

Operate the seat heater on the front right seat » page 90

Note

- The warning light in the button A/C lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. The lighting up of the indicator light in the button signals the operational readiness of the cooling system.
- During operation of the air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

Fig. 126 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually afterwards.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the rotary knob or pressing the respective button. When the function is on, a warning light within or below the button lights up.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 126

A Adjust the temperature for the left side or for both sides
- Reduce temperature
- Increase temperature

B Interior temperature sensor

C Set the temperature (turn to the left: Reduce fan speed, turn to the right: Increase blower speed)

D Display the temperature setting for the right side
› Reduce temperature
› Increase temperature
E Display the temperature setting for the left side
F Display the temperature setting for the right side
G Depending on equipment fitted:
› Switching on/off aux. heating (standard heating) on/off » page 122
› **OFF** Switching Climatronic system off »
Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 90
Air flow to the windows
Air flow to the upper body
Air flow in the footwell
Switch recirculated air on/off » page 117
Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 90
MAX Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off
Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 80
Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 80
SETUP Climatronic set in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*
DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off
AUTO Switching automatic mode on
A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature
The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

The temperature **for both sides,** is set by turning the knob A » Fig. 126 (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is not illuminated).

The temperature **for the right side** is adjusted by turning the knob D (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The temperature **for the left side** is adjusted by turning the knob A (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The interior temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29.5 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +16 ° C is selected, then the respective temperature display **LO** lights up.

If a temperature higher than 29.5 ° C is selected, then the respective temperature display **HI** lights up.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

Controlling blower
The blower stage can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed when the respective number of warning lights illuminate in the control dial C » Fig. 126.

Automatic mode
The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive.

Setting the individual operating modes » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

Climatronic is set to the medium setting at the factory.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode.

The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

WARNING
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Note
- When the intensive windshield defroster MAX is switched on, the air flow to the windows is switched on. The air flow to the windows will remain on even after turning off the intense windshield defroster.
- Do not stick anything onto or cover the interior temperature sensor B » Fig. 126 as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.

▪ As soon as the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.
▪ During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.

Efficient handling of the cooling system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment
Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » page 136.

malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.
› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 229.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 32.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Conditions for the functioning of auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating.
✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).

Auxiliary ventilation
The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)
The auxiliary heating can be used when both when stationary, when the engine is switched off, to preheat the vehicle and also while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heater functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating also warms up the engine.

The auxiliary heating warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. This heats the air flowing into the passenger compartment (if the blower is turned on).

The heater is switched on or off **automatically** depending on the ambient conditions to give the best possible conditions for the engine running and the interior heating.

The automatic switching on and off of the heater can be turned off by a specialist garage.

! WARNING
▪ The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
▪ The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
▪ The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the heater, do not park the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - risk of fire.

CAUTION

- The running auxiliary heater consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the auxiliary heating switches off.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating switches on the blower B » Fig. 125 *on page 119* or C » Fig. 126 *on page 119* only if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the auxiliary heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in an open position. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching on/off

Fig. 127 **Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic**

Read and observe and on page 121 first.

The auxiliary heating can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

- Using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The indicator light in the button illuminates » Fig. 127.
- **ON** By using the radio remote control » page 123.

Manually switching off

- Using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The indicator light in the button goes out » Fig. 127.
- **OFF** By using the radio remote control » page 123.

After switching the system off, the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heater.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump still runs for a short period.

Switching on automatically

The auxiliary heater is switched on according to the Infotainment settings » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

When automatic switching on is activated, the indicator light in the symbol button lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

Switching off automatically

Turning off the auxiliary heating occurs in the following cases.

- The switch-off time set in Infotainment has been achieved » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.
- The fuel level has reached the reserve area (the warning icon illuminates).
- The charge state of the vehicle battery has reduced too much » page 200.

Radio remote control

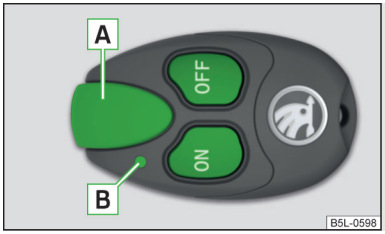

Fig. 128
Radio remote control of the auxiliary heating

Read and observe ! and ! on page 121 first.

Radio remote control » Fig. 128

A Aerial
B Warning light
ON Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial A » Fig. 128 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback.

Display warning light B » Fig. 128	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 225.

! CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.

Communication

SmartGate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

SmartGate is a system which transmits vehicle data via Wi-Fi.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a connected communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook) [1] offer the possibility to further process the received data.

Available applications and further information can be found on the ŠKODA website.

! WARNING

- The national legal regulations for using mobile communication devices in a vehicle must be observed.
- Do not fit the equipment or fixtures onto airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a connected device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area from where it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury.

i Note

The Wi-Fi range is limited to the interior of the vehicle.

Connection with SmartGate

Read and observe ! on page 124 first.

For a successful connection the following conditions must be met.

✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.

Connect

› Enable the connected device to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see operating instructions for the connected device).
› In the Found networks menu, select the connection to the "SmartGate_ ... "network [2].
› Enter the password (the password is pre-set as the complete Vehicle Identification Number at the factory - enter in capital letters).

Disconnect the connection

The connection to SmartGate can be terminated in the following ways.

› By disconnecting the connected device from SmartGate.
› By turning off the Wi-Fi in the connected device.
› By switching off the ignition and removing the key for more than 5 secs (for vehicles with starter button, by turning off the engine and opening the driver's door).

Automatic connection

The connection to SmartGate is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The device to be connected has saved the password required for the connection check.

Connection problems

If the connection fails, check the following points.

› Are the conditions for successful connection fulfilled?
› Is Smart Gate available in the list of available Wi-Fi networks?
› Has the password required for the connection check been entered?
› Is the password required for the connection check correct?
› Is the device to be connected still connected to another Wi-Fi network?

If the above items are ok but the connection still fails, contact a ŠKODA Partner. ▸

[1] The applications support communication devices with the Android operating system version 4.0.x and higher, as well as iOS 7.xx and higher.
[2] The last six symbols of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

Note
Up to four devices can be connected to SmartGate at any one time.

Smart Gate website

Read and observe ! on page 124 first.

There is a special website for the SmartGate system.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the connected device.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

This website contains information about the vehicle, the Wi-Fi connection and SmartGate.

The Wi-Fi connection settings can be adjusted in the Configuration area.

Saving the adjusted settings
The setting changes are only applied after performing the following steps.
› The changes are saved by pressing the "Save" button.
› SmartGate is restarted by pressing the "Reboot "button.

Password management

Read and observe ! on page 124 first.

Password management can be carried out in the connected device on the SmartGate website» page 125, *Smart Gate website*.

The changes are applied after saving and restarting SmartGate » page 125, *Saving the adjusted settings*.

Changing the password
› Enter a new password in the Configuration area in menu option WPA/WPA2 key.

The password must be 8-17 characters without diacritics or special characters (e.g. -, /, etc.).

Connection option without entering a password
› In the Configuration area set the value Open in the menu item Security .

Forgotten password
If you have forgotten your password, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings by a specialist garage.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » page 127, *Turning ignition on/off and starting the engine*.
  - With the ignition off, the steering may lock » page 126 - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 132, *Parking*. Otherwise the steering wheel could block – risk of accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 220.

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 126 first.

The electronic immobilizer makes a possible attempted theft or unauthorized use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Immobilizer active.

IMMOBILIZER ACTIVE

Lock steering lock / unlock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 126 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Withdraw the ignition key.
› Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking

› Insert the key into the ignition lock.
› Switch on the ignition » page 127.

The vehicle is unlocked.

If the ignition switch can not be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

Turning ignition on/off and starting the engine

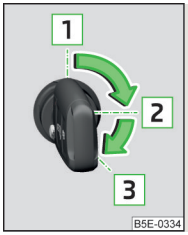

Fig. 129
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe and on page 126 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 129

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching ignition on/off

› Turn key to position 2.

The ignition is switched on.

› Turn key to position 1.

The ignition is switched off.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 as far as it will go - the engine's starting procedure will commence (do not touch the accelerator).
› Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

For vehicles with **diesel engines**, the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine starts after the indicator light goes out.

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Press the clutch to start.**
S **PRESS CLUTCH**

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress the brake to start.**
S **APPLY BRAKE**

Note

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe and on page 126 first.

› Stop the vehicle » page 132, *Parking*.
› Turn key to position 1 » Fig. 129 *on page 127*.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Starting or stopping the engine by pressing button

Introduction

Fig. 130
Starter button (START ENGINE STOP)

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started/stopped with the starter button » Fig. 130.

The key must be in the vehicle in order to unlock the steering wheel, switch on the ignition, start the engine and drive.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 220.

Note

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 129.

Locking/unlocking the steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 128 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking

› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switching ignition on / off

Read and observe and on page 128 first.

› Press the button » Fig. 130 *on page 128* briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic gearbox**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the igition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Ignition on!

IGNITION STILL ON

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Starting the engine

Read and observe and on page 128 first.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Press the starter button » Fig. 130 *on page 128* briefly – the engine starts automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after pressing the button, the glow plug warning light lights up. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Note

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe and on page 128 first.

Switching off

› Stop the vehicle » page 132, *Parking*.
› Press the button » Fig. 130 *on page 128* briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency shutdown

If necessary, the engine in exceptional cases may also be turned off while driving.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 130 *on page 128* for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Problems starting the engine

Fig. 131
Starting the engine - press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 128 first.

The key in the vehicle cannot be verified
If the key in the vehicle cannot be verified, then engine cannot be started by pressing a button.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key not detected. Owner's manual!**
M **Key not found.**
S **NO KEY**

The reasons for this may be:
› The battery in the key is almost out of charge.
› The key is malfunctioning
› There is interference in the signal between the system and the key (strong electromagnetic field).

Try to start the engine by pressing the button with the key » Fig. 131.

System fault
If the following message appears on the display of the instrument cluster, there is a system malfunction.

M **Keyless access system faulty.**
S **KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY**

Try to start the engine by pressing the button with the key » Fig. 131.

! CAUTION
The key can only be verified if it is in the vehicle. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

i Note
▪ When attempting to start, the key bit must be pointed towards the button » Fig. 131.
▪ If the engine fails to start after pressing the button with the key, seek specialist help.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING
▪ Greater physical effort for braking is required when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
▪ During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
▪ When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident!
▪ Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 136, *New brake pads*.

! CAUTION
Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 130 first.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Long or steep slopes
Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display
If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 35, *Brake system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING
Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake

Fig. 132
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 130 first.

The hand brake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 132 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Release the handbrake!**
S **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe and on page 130 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select 1st gear or reverse gear
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual shifting of gears and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing

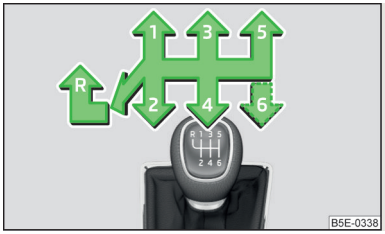

Fig. 133
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

On the shift lever, the individual gear positions are shown » Fig. 133.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 46.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into **R** position » Fig. 133.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

▪ If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
▪ When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances! ▸

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- No throttle when it is set before starting the mode for moving forward with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!
- When the vehicle is stationery and the engine is running, you need to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal in mode **D**, **S** or **R**. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to put in the **P** mode. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

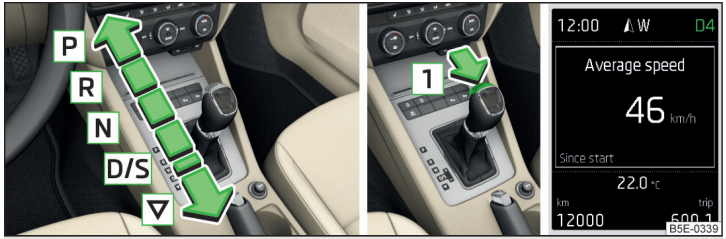

Fig. 134 **Selection lever / lock button / display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 134.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 134.

P – Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N – Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D/S - mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)
The system switches from one mode to the other by moving the selector lever into the spring-loaded position ▽ » Fig. 134.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

In mode **S , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » page 160, *Selection of travel mode (Driving Mode Selection)* , the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

E – Economical driving mode
If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » page 160 is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, transmission is automatically set in mode **E** . This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

In mode **E , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at lower engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light .

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 134 *on page 133* .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D/S**.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 226.

Note
If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

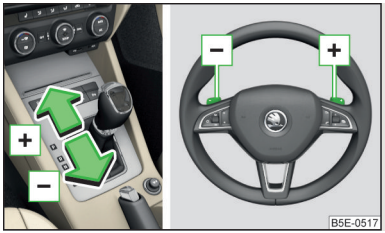

Fig. 135
Selector lever/multi-function steering wheel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 134 *on page 133* .

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 46.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

When switching to the manual shifting while driving, the current gear is maintained.

Shifting up gears
› Push the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 135.
› Pull the right-hand paddle ⊕ » Fig. 135 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears
› Push the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 135 .
› Pull the left-hand paddle ⊖ » Fig. 135 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual shifting in position D/S
› Pull one of the ⊖/⊕ paddles » Fig. 135 briefly towards the steering wheel .

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches ⊖/⊕ for more than 1 Minute, manual shifting of gears is deactivated. You can also deactivate the temporary switch to manual shifting by pulling the right rocker switch ⊕ towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

i Note

▪ It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » page 130.
▪ When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
▪ If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 133 first.

Starting off
› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of 1 » Fig. 134 *on page 133* and hold.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 133 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)
› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

Driving in neutral position in mode E (freewheel)
› Move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.
› Select the Eco driving mode or Individual (Eco Engine) » page 160, *Selection of travel mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.
› Take the foot off the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you briefly depress the accelerator brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch ⊖ towards the steering wheel » page 134, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

This function is not available when towing a trailer.

Launch control[1)]
The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

› Disable the TCS » page 138, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
› START STOP deactivate » page 159, *Manually deactivating/activating the system*.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

1) This function is only valid for some engines.

Reactivate the TCS and START-STOP when the desired speed has been reached.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Retraction and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Driving in

Driving in the engine
The engine has to be run in during the first 1500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1 000 km we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and to dispense with the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres
New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads
New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Switch in an energy saving and timely manner
Observe the recommended gear » page 46.

Avoid full throttle and high speeds
Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling
When the engine is switched off, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine re-start.

Avoid short distances
When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained
Further information » page 204.

Avoid unnecessary ballast
Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 1 l/100 km. At a speed of 100-120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity
Electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating, air conditioning and the like) only turn on for as long as necessary.

In Infotainment, the display is shown of up to three consumers which are currently showing the highest degree of fuel consumption » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Driving through water and driving off of made-up roads

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Immediately after driving through water, mud, slush and the like, braking effectiveness will be temporarily impaired » page 130, *Information on braking* . For this reason, sudden and violent braking manoeuvres are to be avoided - there is a risk of accident!

Driving through water

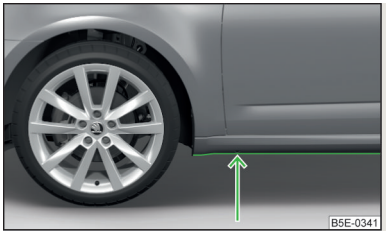

Fig. 136
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

Read and observe ! on page 137 first.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 136.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- If water penetrates into the intake system of the engine, there is a risk of serious damage to the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as the chassis, the electrics or the transmission can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Driving off paved roads

Read and observe ! on page 137 first.

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 238, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

WARNING

Drive particularly aware and pro-actively outside paved roads.
- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Objects trapped under the floor of the vehicle can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, the seals and other parts of the chassis. Check the underside of the vehicle and remove the trapped objects.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the chassis and its components can get damaged.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Assist systems

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

This chapter deals with the functions of the braking and stabilisation systems, with the error indicator referred to in chapter » page 34, *Warning lights*.

The braking and stabilisation systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. oversteer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Enable/disable ESC Sport

ESC Sport allows for sportier driving style. The activation of the ESC sport leads to **the ASR being deactivated** and no ESC interventions will occur in the event of slight over- or under-steering occurring.

The activation or deactivation of the ESC sports can be done in one of two ways.

› By pressing the Symbol key for the activation and briefly pressing the button for the deactivation » Fig. 137 *on page 139*.

› In Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light comes on and the display shows the following message.

M **ESC sport: Limited driving stability.**

S **ESC SPORT**

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the control indicator turns off and the display shows the following message.

M **Stabilisation control (ESC) activated.**

S **ESC ON**

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)

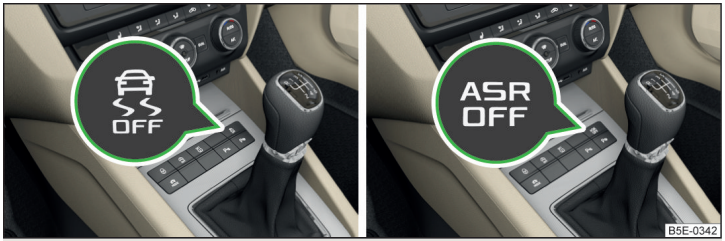

Fig. 137 **System button: Vehicle with ESC / vehicle without ESC**

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating TCS
The activation or deactivation of TCS can be done, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.
› In Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.
› By briefly pressing the symbol key » Fig. 137.
› By briefly pressing the symbol key ASR OFF » Fig. 137.

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light lights up and the display shows the following message.

M **Traction control (ASR) deactivated.**
S **ASR OFF**

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator turns and the display shows the following message.

M **Traction control (ASR) activated.**
S **ASR ON**

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

Note
On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the ASR system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

EDL
EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS
XDL is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDL does not respond to traction, but to the load relief of the inner front wheel of the driving axle during fast cornering.

The automatic brake intervention on the brake of the wheel with reduced load prevents the wheel from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

The DSR indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

The HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

HHC allows you, when driving on slopes, to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Multi-collision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

The MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision through automatic braking interventions and to stabilize the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ A **head-on** or **side** collision occurred.
- ✓ The impact speed was higher than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilisation (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.

The activated TSA is shown by the fact that after switching on the ignition, the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the indicator light.

Further information » page 169, *Hitch and trailer*.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to only as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the ultrasonic sensors are located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 139 *on page 141*.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people not to be recognised by the system.
- You should satisfy yourself before reversing that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 139 *on page 141* clean, and free from snow and ice, and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be limited.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system functioning may be limited - "incorrect obstacle detection".
- Additionally installed accessories such as bicycle carriers can impair the system functioning.

Function

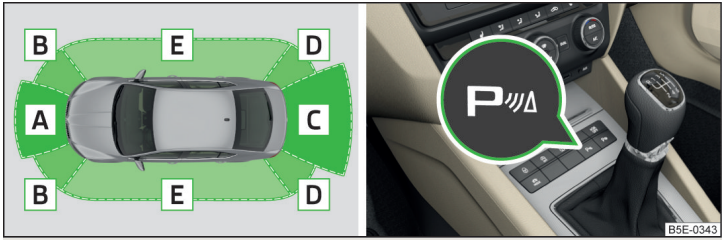

Fig. 138 **Sampled areas and range of the sensors / system button (Version 2, 3)**

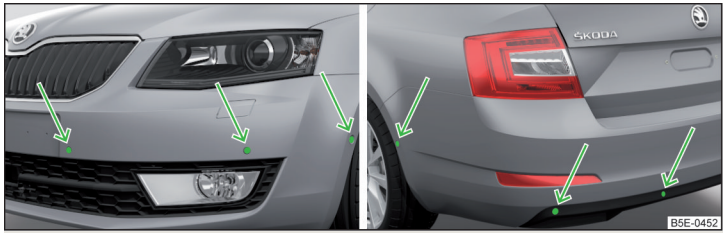

Fig. 139 **Fitting the ultrasonic sensors: front/rear**

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist » Fig. 138.

› Version 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
› Version 2: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D.
› Version 3: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 138	Version 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Version 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	90
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	90
E	-	-	90

Acoustic signals and display

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

For information on setting the acoustic signals and a description of the Infotainment display, see » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Towing a trailer
On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only the areas A and B » Fig. 138 of the system are active when operating a trailer, there is no road display.

Note
- If not all fields around vehicles with **Version 3** are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The system is automatically activated by selecting **reverse gear** or pressing the symbol button P » Fig. 138 *on page 141* .

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal (the symbol P in the button lights up).

On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **Version 2 and 3**, the system is deactivated by pressing the symbol button P or automatically at a speed over 10 km/h (the symbol P in the button goes out).

Fault display
If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol P flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
- The system can only be activated via the symbol button P at a speed of below 10 km/hr.
- By means of the key in the infotainment display » Fig. 140 *on page 142* the display can be switched to the camera image » page 143, *Optical Parking Assistant (rear view camera)* .

Road display

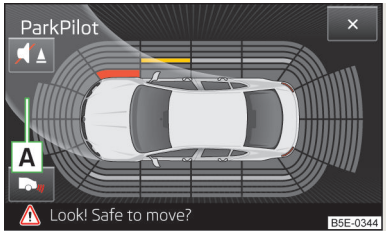

Fig. 140
Infotainment display: Road display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The display of the upcoming road changes depending on the steering angle A » Fig. 140.

Obstacles that are **located** on the road are represented by the following colours.
› Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
› Yellow – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

Obstacles that are **not located** on the road are represented by the following colours.
› Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
› White – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

The road **ahead** is displayed when a forward gear or Neutral is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **D/S** or position **N** is set.

The road **behind the vehicle** is displayed when reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **R**.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

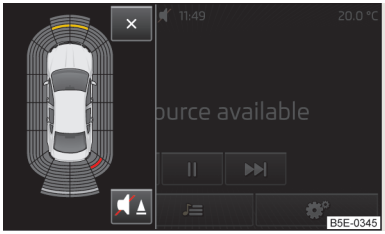

Fig. 141
Infotainment display: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Automatic activation takes place at a speed below around 10 km/h under the following conditions.

› The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 90 cm.
› The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 30 cm.
› The distance to the obstacle to the side of the vehicle is less than around 30 cm.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 141.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

Automatic display can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Optical Parking Assistant (rear view camera)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Optical Parking assistant (hereinafter only as a system) displays in Infotainment the area to the rear of the vehicle monitored by the camera » Fig. 142 *on page 143* .

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Make sure that the camera lens is not dirty or covered, otherwise the system function can be significantly impaired. Information on cleaning » page 184, *Camera lens*

! CAUTION

- The camera lens distorts and enlarges the field of view of the difference in eye sight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- It is only a two-dimensional display. Therefore, protruding objects or roadway depressions, for example, may not be recognised due to lack of space depth.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Operation

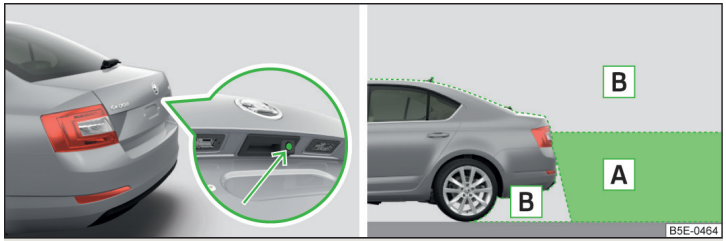

Fig. 142 **Position of the camera / Monitored area**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 143 first.

Monitored area » Fig. 142

A Detection range of the camera.
B Area outside the detection range of the camera.

The area behind the vehicle is displayed when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Reverse gear is engaged.[1)]
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is not travelling at more than about 10 km/h.

Note

▪ The display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol key P » Fig. 138 *on page 141*.
▪ After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 141.

Orientation lines and function keys

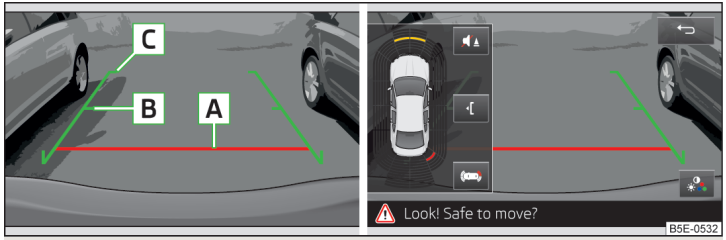

Fig. 143 **Infotainment display: Orientation lines / function keys**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 143 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle in the display.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 143

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is approximately 100 cm.
C The distance is approximately 200 cm.

The distance between the lateral guide bars corresponds to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function keys » Fig. 143

Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle.
Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour.
/ Switch the audible parking signals on/off.
/ Enabling and reduced park assistance display.
Change to park assistance display.

CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
▪ Protruding objects, such as a hitch, the rear of a truck and the like.
▪ When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
▪ When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Note

The orientation lines are immobile, and therefore the spacing of the bars behind the vehicle will vary, depending on the vehicle load state and the road inclination.

Park assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or driving out of the parking space, the driver operates the pedals as well as the gear lever. ▸

[1)] The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 140, *Parking aid* **must also be read and observed.**

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road because of the surface conditions. Therefore we suggest that you do not use the system in such situations.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences or powder snow cannot be recognised by the system.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system functioning may be limited - "incorrect obstacle detection".

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Do without the use of the system if snow chains or a spare wheel is mounted.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

Note

We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.

Functioning

Read and observe and on page 145 first.

Basic system operations

› The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
› The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
› The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
› Automatic rotation of the front wheels during the parking.

The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display) information and system messages are displayed.

When the system is activated, the warning light lights up » Fig. 144 *on page 145* - A.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Finding a parking space

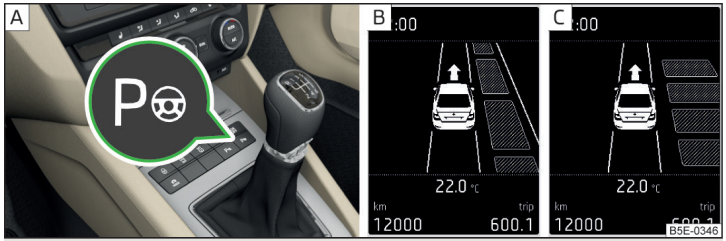

Fig. 144 **System button / display**

Read and observe and on page 145 first.

Finding a parallel parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the symbol button**once** » Fig. 144 .

The display shows » Fig. 144 - B.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

› Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
› Press the symbol button **twice** P » Fig. 144 .

The display shows the following » Fig. 144 - C.

The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is automatically indicated on the display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. In the display the search area for the parking space is indicated on the driver's side.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

If the driver changes the parking mode while searching for a parking space, the symbol button P must be pressed again.

Note

If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display , the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking) .

Parking

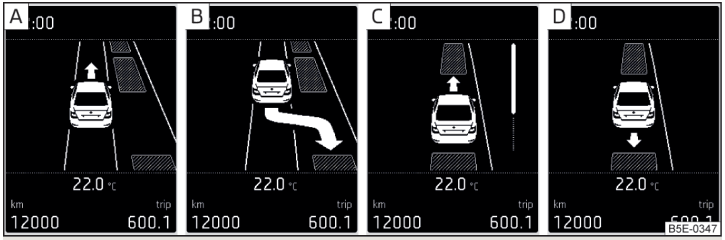

Fig. 145 **Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Display » Fig. 145

A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
B Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
C Indication for selecting the forward gear.
D Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 145 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 145 - B.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steer. interv. active Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the forward arrow flashes in the display » Fig. 145 - C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever to position **D/S**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 145 - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R** .

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.
As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!

Automatic brake assist when speeding

If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic termination
The system terminates the parking procedure if one of the following cases arises.
› A speed of 7 km / h is exceeded for the second time.
› The time limit of 6 minutes is exceeded.
› The system key is pressed.
› The ASR system is turned off.
› There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
› When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occur, the following warning message is displayed » page 147.

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Manoeuvring out
› Press the symbol button **once** P » Fig. 144 *on page 145* .
› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steer. interv. active Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.
› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.
As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display:

Please take over steering and drive on.

Automatic termination
The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.
› The system key is pressed.
› The ASR system is turned off.
› There is a driver intervention in the automatic steering operation (wheel stop).
› When there is a system fault (system temporarily not available).
› There is an automatic emergency braking.

If any of the above events occur, the following warning message is displayed » page 147.

Automatic emergency braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
If the parking is aborted due to the speed exceeding 7 km / h for the second speed, then the automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system!

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.
The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is P must be reactivated.

Speed too high. Take over steering!

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

Park Assist stopped. Driver steer. intervent.

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist stopped. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist stopped. Not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

Park Assist: indicate and engage reverse

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

Aut. parking space exit not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

Braking intervention. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The state where the GRA maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- The GRA only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Functioning

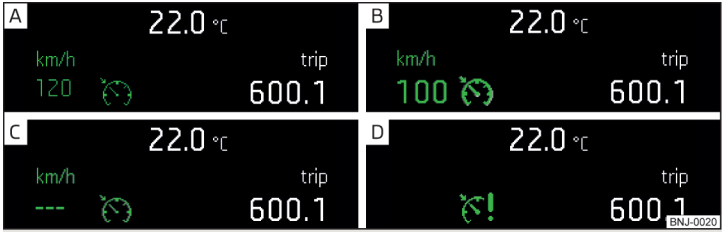

Fig. 146 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

CCS status indications » Fig. 146

A Speed set, control inactive (the number of speed indications are small and grey in colour).

B Control is active (the numbers of speed indications are shown large or are highlighted).

C No speed set.

D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The GRA is activated.

✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, second gear or higher is engaged.

✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.

✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

WARNING

If the engine power or engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, the driver must take control of vehicle operation.

Operating Description

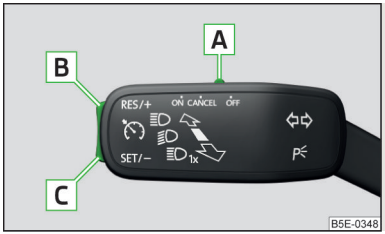

Fig. 147
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 147

A	**OFF**	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
	CANCEL	Stop control (sprung position)
	ON	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is set, the current speed is used.

At the start of the control process, the CCS regulates the vehicle to the current speed, and this speed is shown on the instrument cluster display. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Automatic control interruption

Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

› The brake pedal is operated.
› When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
› Through an airbag deployment.

WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent unintentional switching on of the system.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adaptive cruise control (from here on referred to only as ACC) can maintain the set speed or the proximity to the vehicle ahead consistently, without the need to operate the gas or brake pedals.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

WARNING

- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- When riding on a steep gradient / high slope.

CAUTION

The control may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor

Fig. 148
Mounting location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

The radar sensor » Fig. 148 (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle.

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

› The sensor is covered by mud, snow or debris, for example.
› The sensor or its immediate surroundings are covered by other objects, for example, a sticker is attached.
› When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or does not have "visibility" for any other reason, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display » page 155.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to an impairment of the ACC function - risk of accidents! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front of and around the sensor must not be covered with stickers, additional lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

WARNING

The sensor may not be able to distinguish all objects correctly under certain circumstances. You should therefore not use ACC in the following cases - risk of accidents!

- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

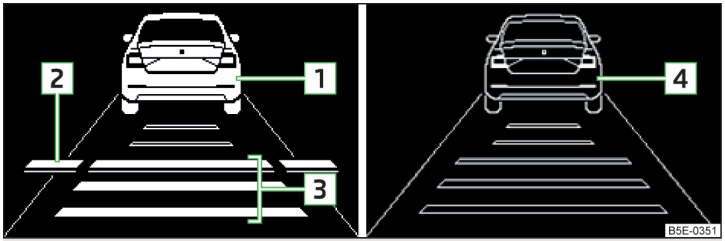

Fig. 149 **Instrument cluster display (ACC): Set proximity, recognized vehicle**

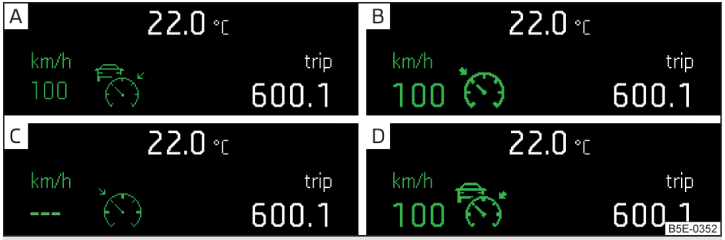

Fig. 150 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

ACC can be controlled and the settings adjusted using the control lever » Fig. 151 *on page 152* or in Infotainment » *infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR key)*.

Distance setting and a detected vehicle » Fig. 149

1 Vehicle detected (control active).
2 Line, which indicates the time interval delay when adjusting.
3 Set time interval to the vehicle ahead.
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated).

ACC status indications » Fig. 150

A Control is inactive (the numbers of the speed indications are small and of a grey color).
B Control activated - no vehicle detected.
C Control deactivated - no speed stored.
D Control active - vehicle is detected (the figures of the speed indications are displayed larger or are highlighted).

The ACC can consistently maintain the set speed of 30-160 km/h, as well as the proximity to the vehicle ahead ranging from a very small to a very long time interval.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, in the instrument cluster, the warning light lights up and the display shows the following message.

Apply the brake!

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

Note

Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stop-start

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Depress the brake pedal.

Operation Overview

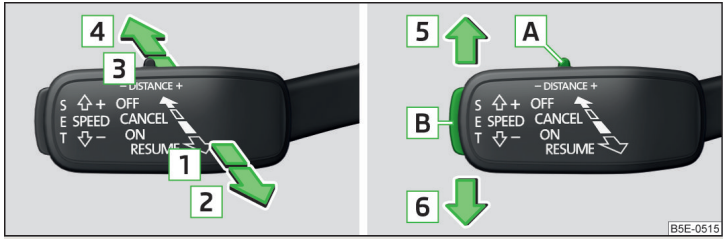

Fig. 151 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 151

A	– DISTANCE +	Set proximity level
B	SET	Start control (adopt current speed) / Reduce speed by 1 km/h at a time
1	ON	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
2	RESUME	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
4	OFF	Deactivate ACC
5	SPEED +	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	SPEED –	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time

Note
If the lever is set » Fig. 151 from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position, **RESUME** the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ TCS is enabled » page 138, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the current speed must be higher than approx. 25 km/h.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the current speed must be higher than approx. 2 km/h.

The control be started with the key **SET** or by adjusting the lever **RESUME** » Fig. 151 *on page 152* into the sprung position.

Button SET
› Press **SET** button.

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control.

Lever position RESUME
› Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** .

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control. Should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

Note

- If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.
- When TCS is disabled, it will be activated automatically upon starting control.
- If the TCS is deactivated during control, control is stopped automatically.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 151 *on page 152* .

or

› Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 152.

WARNING

Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch is held down for longer than 30 s.

Set/change the desired speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever» page 152.

The set speed is stored upon releasing the lever or the button on the button on the lever.

Setting/changing the speed by 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

Increasing the speed by 1 km/h at a time (RESUME) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ Vehicle control taking place.

Decreasing the speed by 1 km/h at a time (SET) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ Vehicle control taking place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 152.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored the first time the button is pressed. Press the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Set time interval level

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » Fig. 151 *on page 152* or in Infotainment » *infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Setting by means of the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** into the sprung position + or - » Fig. 151 *on page 152*.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line 2 » Fig. 149 *on page 151*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust line 2 to the desired distance level.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The proximity is dependent on the speed. The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- On wet roads, a longer time interval to the vehicle ahead should always be selected than on dry roads.

Special driving conditions

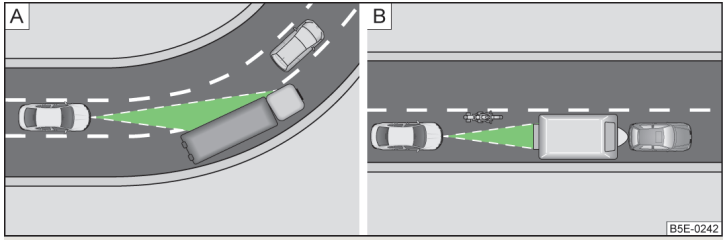

Fig. 152 **Special conditions: Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

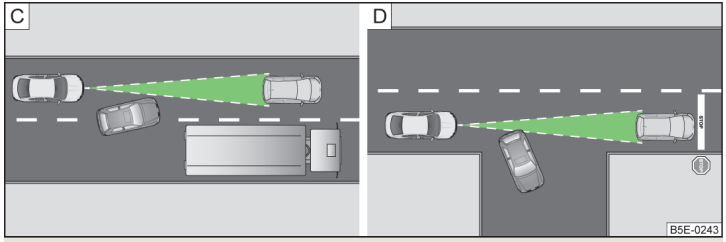

Fig. 153 **Special conditions: Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

The following and similar situations require special attention of the driver.

When cornering

When driving around long bends the ACC may respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane » Fig. 152 - A. Your own vehicle is regulated with respect to this vehicle and will no longer respond to the vehicle ahead.

In such cases, control should be disabled by accelerating, applying the brake or pressing the button on the operating lever . CANCEL » Fig. 151 *on page 152*.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range » Fig. 152 - B.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small proximity » Fig. 153 - C do not have to be detected by the radar sensor in time. The result may be a delayed ACC response.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 153 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

In such cases, take over the steering and stop the vehicle by applying the foot brake.

When overtaking

When your vehicle is being controlled (the speed is lower than that which is stored) and the indicator is activated, the ACC interprets this situation as meaning that the driver intends to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If the vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button CANCEL on the lever » Fig. 151 *on page 152* .

Vehicles with special load or special body parts

Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Control should therefore be disabled whenever you are driving behind or overtaking such a vehicle.

Towing a trailer
When towing a trailer, the ACC control will be less powerful. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Information messages

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

ACC: No sensor view!

The sensor is dirty or has no "visibility". Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of "visibility" » Fig. 148 *on page 150*. Should the ACC still be unavailable after the engine is restarted, push the lever into **OFF** » Fig. 151 *on page 152* position. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ACC not available.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the ACC is still not available, push the lever into position **OFF** . Seek help from a specialist garage.

Error: ACC

There is an ACC system error. Push the lever into position . **OFF** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Speed limit

Increase the speed accordingly and start control» page 152.

Front Assistant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Front Assistant (from here on only referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor » Fig. 154 *on page 155*.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- The system has physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The increased passenger protection afforded through the system must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor

Fig. 154
Mounting location of the radar sensor

Read and observe and on page 155 first.

The radar sensor » Fig. 154(hereinafter referred to simply as the sensor) can detect objects by emitting and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.
› The sensor is soiled by mud, snow etc.
› The area in front and around the sensor is obscured by labels, auxiliary lights or similar items.
› Visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or covered, the corresponding message appears on the display of the instrument cluster » page 157, *Information messages*.

WARNING

▪ If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the system. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
▪ The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
▪ The area in front and around the sensor should not be obscured by labels, auxiliary lights or similar items. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

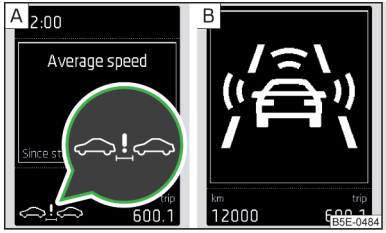

Fig. 155
Instrument cluster display: Note (dangerous distance)advance / warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.
› Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
› Warns you of an impending collision.
› Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
› Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
› If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, automatic braking is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is enabled » page 138, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
✓ The vehicle is traveling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp "curves or with an ESC engagement » page 138.

proximity warning (dangerous proximity)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

If a safe distance to the vehicle ahead is not maintained, the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » Fig. 155 *on page 156* - A.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
In a driving speed range of approx. 5 km/h to approx. 30 km/h, the automatic braking action is not preceded by a warning. In the event of an immediate risk of impact, automatic braking is carried out with the breaking force increasing in stages.

The symbol » Fig. 155 *on page 156* - B appears in the display during automatic braking

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the symbol » Fig. 155 *on page 156* - B appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
› If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 210 km/h.
› If there is a risk of collision with a stationary obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 85 km/h.

When the advance warning is issued, the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, the system starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

Brake Support
If the driver does not brake sufficiently in the event of an impending collision, the system automatically increases the braking force.

The brake support only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Note

▪ If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.
▪ The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by means of a steering intervention.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe and on page 155 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases ».

The system can be activated or deactivated in one of two ways.
› In the instrument cluster display » page 51, *Menu item wizard*.
› In Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

The following functions can be activated or deactivated separately in infotainment.
› Distance warning
› Advance warning

Once one of these functions has been deactivated, it remains disabled even after switching the ignition off and on.

WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assistant should be deactivated for safety reasons.
▪ When the vehicle is being towed away.
▪ When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
▪ If an unfounded warning was issued or a system action carried out.
▪ When on a truck, car ferry or similar.

Information messages

Read and observe and on page 155 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Front Assist: No sensor view.

The sensor is soiled or covered.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the item causing the lack of visibility » Fig. 154 *on page 155*.

If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 157. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist not available.

The system is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again.

If the message appears again after starting the engine, the system should be disabled » page 157. Seek help from a specialist garage.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) saves fuel and reduces polluting emissions and CO_2 emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

WARNING

- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions of the system

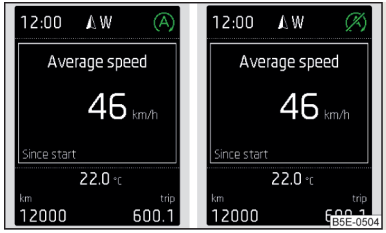

Fig. 156
Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

For system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to work, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function correctly cannot be influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

If, after stopping the vehicle, the check icon » Fig. 156 appears on the display, then the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are not met.

Running the engine is essential for the following reasons, for example.

› The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
› The current consumption is too high.
› High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Note

- If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown

› Stop the vehicle.
› Put the gear stick into Neutral.

› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown then occurs and the indicator symbol appears in the display Ⓐ » Fig. 156 *on page 158*.

Automatic engine start
› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic re-start process takes place and the indicator symbol Ⓐ goes out.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown
› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shutdown then occurs and the indicator symbol appears in the display Ⓐ » Fig. 156 *on page 158*.

Automatic engine start
› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic re-start process takes place and the indicator symbol Ⓐ goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission
Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D/S**, **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P** the engine remains shut down after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position then the automatic starts the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D/S** or **N** the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km / h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System related automatic start-up

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. Some possible reasons for this are:
› The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
› The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
› The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Fig. 157
Button for the START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

Deactivating/activating
› Press the symbol button Ⓐ OFF » Fig. 157.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note
- If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.
- Selecting the driving mode Eco when the system is deactivated will automatically activate the system » page 160, *Selection of travel mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 158 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

M **Start the engine manually!**

S **START MANUALLY**

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the starter button, the ignition is turned off by the first press of the starter button; the start process is only initiated when the button is pressed for the second time.

M **Error: start-stop system**

S **START STOP ERROR**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Selection of travel mode (Driving Mode Selection)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behavior can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes of Normal, Sport, Eco, Individual are available.

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off.

! WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Selection

Fig. 158 **Button for selecting the driving mode: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

› Press the symbol button MODE or VIRS MODE » Fig. 158 .

The menu is displayed on the infotainment screen.

The mode is changed by repeatedly pressing the symbol button MODE or VIRS MODE or in the Infotainment display » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

If a driving mode other than Normal is selected, then the symbol lights up on the button MODE or VIRS MODE » Fig. 158.

! WARNING

Setting the driving mode while driving can distract you from other traffic – risk of accident.

Normal Mode

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

This mode is suitable for common everyday use.

Sportmode

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving style.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems. ▸

Engine (drive)
The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in Normal mode.

The engine noise is noticeable in the interior more intensely than in normalmode[1].

Steering
The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
The acceleration is quicker than in normal mode with distance control » page 149.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)
The headlights adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode Normal » page 74.

ProActive passenger protection
The first level of protection is deactivated » page 161.

Ecomode

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)
Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in Normal mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 46.

When the START-STOP system was deactivated manually » page 158, it is automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 133.

The engine noise is felt less intensely in the interior less than in normalmode[1].

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in Normal » page 149mode with distance control.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)
The system is automatically deactivated » page 74.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)
The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode Normal.

Note
- The Eco driving mode is not available when towing a trailer. When the vehicle is connected electrically to a trailer and is in the Eco driving mode, the Normal driving mode is configured automatically.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kickdown function) is possible also in driving mode Eco.

Individualmode

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

In mode Individual you can select between Normal, Sport and Eco for each system separately » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings*.

ProActive passenger protection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ProActive passenger protection (From here on referred to only as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

WARNING
- The increased safety by ProActive passenger protection must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

[1] Applies to Octavia RS, Octavia RS.

Note

The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 38, *Security systems*.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

The system is activated whenever the ignition is switched on, and is ready to intervene automatically under the following conditions.

✓ The engine is running.

✓ The vehicle moves at a speed of more than 30 km/h.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

› The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.

› The windows in the side doors (if open) are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.

› The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first level of protection can be deactivated by one of the following measures.

› Deactivation of the system in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

› Deactivation of TCS » page 139.

› Selecting the driving mode Sport » page 160.

Provided that the driving mode Sports is not selected, the system is activated over the two levels of protection after switching the ignition off and on again.

The second level of protection

The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as in panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Note

If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated » page 21 the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

Lane Assist

Introduction

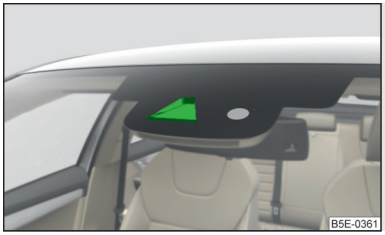

Fig. 159
Camera viewing window for Lane Assist

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Lane Assist (From here on referred to only as the system), helps to keep the vehicle within the lane.

The system detects the boundary lines of a lane using the camera » Fig. 159.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be overridden at any time.

WARNING

- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects on the road may be incorrectly detected as lines. As a result, an incorrect steering intervention may take place.

WARNING

The detection capability of the camera may be limited by various external influences. In such cases, the assistant may not detect the line between two lanes at all or not properly. The detection capability of the camera may be restricted in the following situations, for example.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The viewing range of the camera is impeded by a vehicle traveling ahead.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Operation

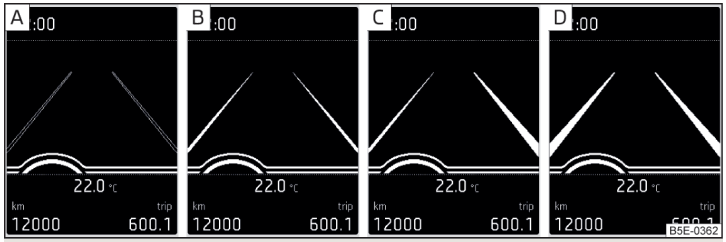

Fig. 160 **Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

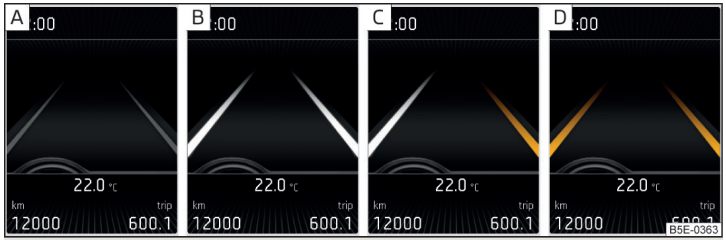

Fig. 161 **Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

System displays » Fig. 160 » Fig. 161

- **A** The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
- **B** The system is active and ready to intervene.
- **C** The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
- **D** Adaptive lane assist ensues (boundary lines on both sides of the vehicle detected).

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

✓ The system is activated.

✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than 65 km/h.

✓ The boundary lines are clearly visible (appropriate longitudinal markings).
✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.
✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on prior to driving over the boundary line (e.g. when making a turn), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

Warning light	Meaning
	The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
	The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Adaptive lane assist
Adaptive lane assist helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the system detects only one boundary line, it will help to maintain the selected proximity from said boundary line.

If the proximity to the detected boundary line is changed, the system quickly adapts and maintains the newly-selected position.

WARNING
The function of adaptive lane guidance Assist system may be restricted when driving e.g. over rutted roads, on a slope, or if there are lateral winds.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.
› In the **Assist systems** menu item in the instrument cluster display » page 51, *Menu item wizard*.
› In Infotainment » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Adaptive tracking can also be enabled or disabled In Infotainment.

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 163 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Assist not available. No sensor view.

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Lane Assist currently not available.

The system has limited functionality due to a temporary error. Try to re-activate the machine.

Error: Lane Assist

There is a system error. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Lane Assist: Take over steering!

The system has detected that there are no hands on the steering wheel. In this case, the Assist system is not ready to intervene. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The traffic sign recognition system (hereinafter referred to only as system) shows certain traffic signs on the display of the instrument cluster.

WARNING
- The system only serves to support and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.

WARNING (Continued)

- Traffic signs may not be recognised at all by the system, or may be recognised incorrectly. As a result, the traffic signs may not be displayed at all, or the wrong one may appear.
- On the system side, only a traffic sign display is undertaken, neither a warning when limit is exceeded or driving speed adjustment is undertaken!
- The speed information in the displayed road signs refer to the country-specific speed units. For example, the notification ㉚ in the display may therefore refer to km/h or mph, depending on the country.

Note

The system is only available in some countries.

Function

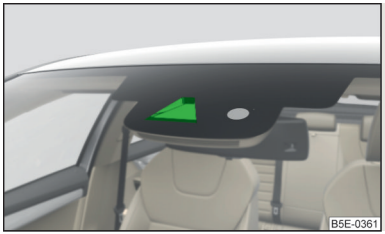

Fig. 162
Camera viewing range for traffic sign recognition

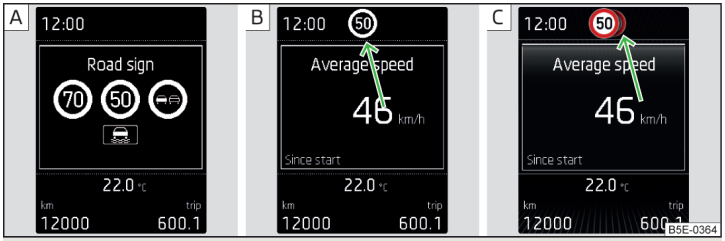

Fig. 163 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of system indications**

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

System displays » Fig. 163

A Display of detected traffic signs
B Additional display (monochromatic display)
C Additional display (color display)

The detected traffic signs are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 47, *Driving data (Multifunction display)*.

- **Driving data**
  - **Road sign**

The system can display in the display the following recognized traffic sign.
› Speed limit
› Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system works on the basis of the data captured by the camera and is only able to show traffic signs which are in the camera's "viewing range" » Fig. 162.

Data from the camera can be supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in the following situations.
› Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
› The camera is blinded by the sun.
› The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
› The camera "viewing range" is obstructed by an obstacle.
› Travelling at high speed.
› The traffic signs are fully or partially obscured (e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles).
› The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border).
› The traffic signs are damaged or bent.
› The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
› The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Additional display

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

If the menu item **Road sign** is currently not shown » Fig. 163 *on page 165* - A, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 163 *on page 165* - B, C.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, the next traffic sign will also in some cases be displayed in the colour display - C. All detected traffic signs can be displayed in the menu item **Road sign** - A.

The additional display traffic sign detection can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Traffic sign display when towing a trailer

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

When towing a trailer, displaying the traffic signs which apply when towing a trailer can be activated.

The traffic sign detection display when towing a trailer can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

No road signs available.

No maximum speeds were recognised (e.g. on German motorways where there is no speed limit).

Error: Dynamic Road Sign Display

There is a system error. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Dynamic Road Sign Display clean windscreen!

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Dynamic Road Sign Display currently restricted.

Infotainment Navigation is not currently providing any data. Check whether the maps are up-to-date or the whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to only as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behavior, driver fatigue can be detected.

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behavior. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behavior and recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km / h.

The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.

› The vehicle is stopped and the ignition is turned off.
› The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt is taken off and the driver's door is opened.
› The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster

M Driver alert. Take a break!

S DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK

An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to simply as the system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard.

Information on the procedure for the notification of a change in tyre inflation pressure » page 39.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

! WARNING

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre inflation pressure must be checked regularly » page 204.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.

Saving tyre pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 167 first.

The tyre pressure values are always stored in the system if one of the following events occurs.

› Change of tyre inflation pressure.
› Change one or more wheels.
› Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
› The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the tyre pressure values are stored either in Infotainment or by pressing a button.

! WARNING

Before storing the pressure values, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 204. If incorrect pressure values are saved, the system may also not issue a warning even if the tyre inflation pressure is too low.l

! CAUTION

The tyre pressure values must be saved every 10,000 km or once annually in order to ensure correct system functioning.

Saving tyre pressure values and infotainment display

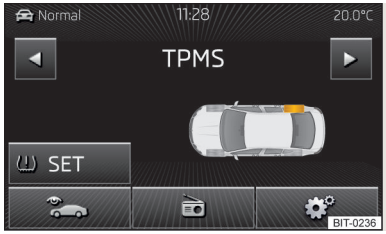

Fig. 164
Button for storing the pressure values /example of the display: the system is indicating a change in tyre pressure in the rear right-hand tyre

Read and observe ! on page 167 first.

› Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Infotainment switches on.
› Press the button CAR → → **Vehicle status**.
› Using the function keys, ◀ ▶ select the menu item *Tyre Press. Loss Indicator*.
› Press the **SET** » Fig. 164 button.

Follow the instructions that appear on the display.

A message in the display provides information about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When warning light lights up in the instrument cluster, the affected tyre can be displayed in Infotainment » Fig. 164.

Saving tyre pressure values by pressing a button

Fig. 165
Button for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 167 first.

› Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold » Fig. 165 the symbol key.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

An acoustic signal sounds and the warning light goes out - this indicates that the tyre pressure values have been saved.

› Release the symbol key the symbol key

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **75 kg**.

For vehicles with all-wheel drive, the maximum trailer nose weight is **80 kg.**

With G-TEC-vehicles, the maximum trailer drawbar load is **56 kg** .

WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the ball rod if it is not correctly inserted into the mounting recess and secured.
- Do not use the towing hitch if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Never release the ball rod while the trailer is still coupled.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!

CAUTION

- Take care when using the ball rod - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper.
- When the ball rod is removed always place the cover onto the mounting recess - there is a danger of soiling the mounting recess.

Note

- Operation and maintenance of the tow hitch » page 185.
- The towing vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 223.

Description

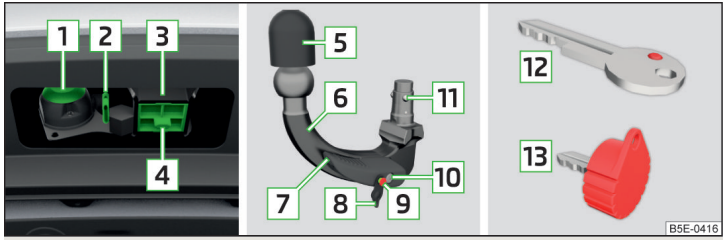

Fig. 166 **Support for the hitch equipment / ball bar / key (Version 1 and 2)**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

The ball rod can be removed and is located in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

The hitch comes with two key versions. The handling of the hitch is identical for the two key versions. The difference is only in the key version.

Carrier for the towing device and ball rod » Fig. 166

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eye
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Ball rod
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Trigger pin
10 Lock
11 Locking ball
12 Key – Version 1
13 Key – Version 2

Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

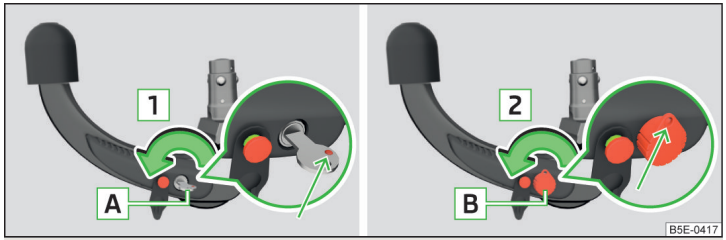

Fig. 167 **1st Step: Key Version 1 / key Version 2**

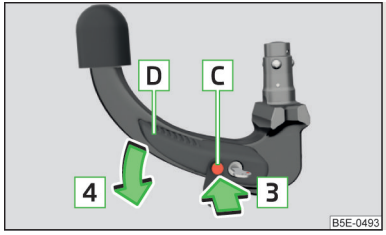

Fig. 168
2nd step: both key versions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

The ball rod must be set to the ready position prior to installation » page 170, *Correctly adjusted ready position*.

If it is not in the ready position, then it must be set to the ready position as follows.

1st Step - applies to the key version 1

› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key A into the lock so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 167.

1st Step - applies to the key version 2

› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key B into the lock so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow B 2 so that the conclusions release shows up » Fig. 167.

2nd Step - applies to both key versions

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Push release pin C in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever D in the direction of arrow 4 to the stop » Fig. 168.

Operating lever D remains locked in this position.

Correctly adjusted ready position

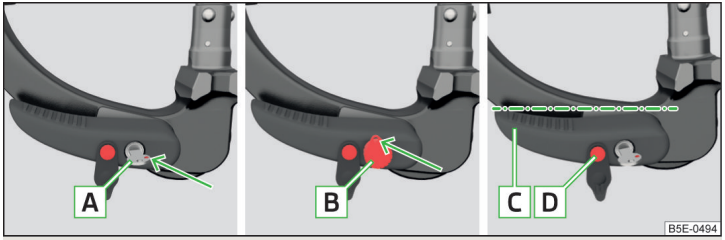

Fig. 169 **Ready position: Key Version 1 / key Version 2 / position of the lever and the release bolt with two key versions**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

Correctly adjusted ready position » Fig. 169

✓ Applies to key version 1 - the red marking on key A is pointing upwards.
✓ Applies to key version 2 - the eye of the key B is pointing upwards.
✓ Operating lever C is locked in the lower position.
✓ The trigger pin D can be moved.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

! CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned into a different position.

Assembling the ball rod - 1st step

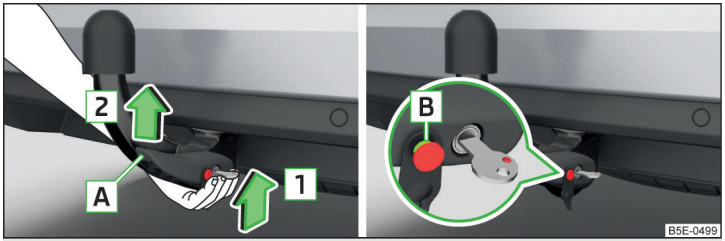

Fig. 170 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

Insert ball rod - applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 166 *on page 169* in a downwards direction.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 170.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 170 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 1 until you hear it click into place » !.

The lever A **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 2 and the release pin B pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If lever A does not turn automatically, or if the release pin B does not pop out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning lever A downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

Assembling the ball rod - 2nd step

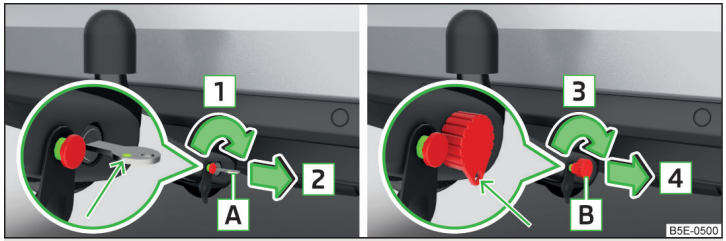

Fig. 171 **Lock lock: Key Version 1 / key Version 2**

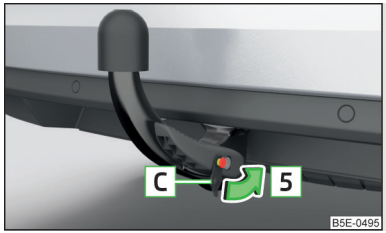

Fig. 172
Place cap on the lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

Firstly, carry out the 1st step of ball rod assembly » page 171.

Applies to the key version 1

› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 171.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.

Applies to the key version 2

› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the conclusions release points down » Fig. 171.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 4.

Applies to both key versions

› Fit and press cap C onto the lock in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 172.
› Check that the ball rod is securely attached » page 172, *Check proper fitting*.

CAUTION

After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock – risk of lock getting dirty.

Check proper fitting

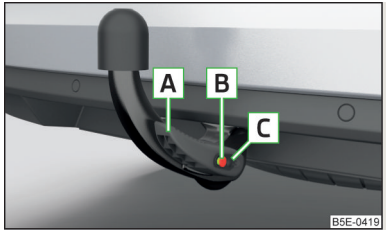

Fig. 173
Duly fortified ball head

Read and observe and on page 169 first.

Before each use of the ball rod, check that it is attached properly.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 173

- ✓ The ball rod does not come off the mounting recess even after strong "shaking".
- ✓ Operating lever A is as far up as possible.
- ✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ The cap B is on the hand-wheel.

WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the ball rod was properly locked!

Removing the ball rod - 1st step

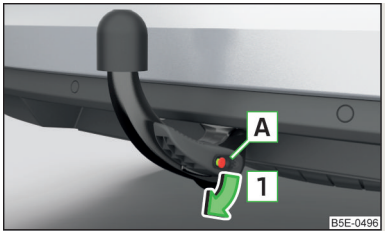

Fig. 174
Remove the cap from the lock

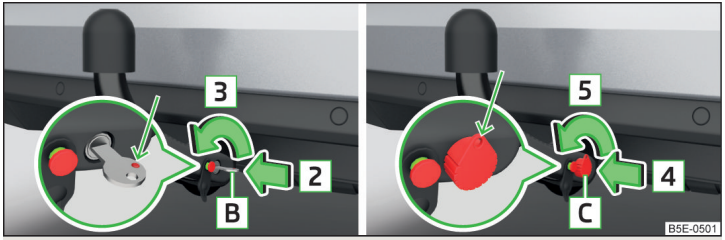

Fig. 175 **Unlock lock: Key Version 1 / version 2 key**

Read and observe and on page 169 first.

Applies to both key variants

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 174.

Applies to key version 1

› Insert key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2 so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 175.

Applies to key version 2

› Insert key C into the lock in the direction of arrow 4 so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn key C in the direction of arrow 5 so that the eye of the key is pointing upwards » Fig. 175.

WARNING

Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

Note

We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

Removing the ball rod - 2nd step

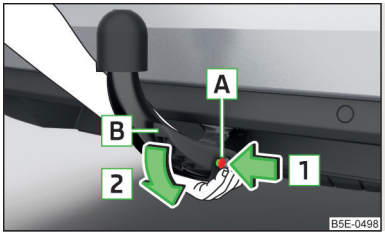

Fig. 176
Release ball bar

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

Firstly, carry out the 1st step of ball rod removal » page 172.

Release ball head - applies to both key versions

› Grasp the ball rod from **below** » Fig. 176.
› Push release pin A in the direction of arrow 1 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 to the stop .

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-fitted » !.

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 166 *on page 169* onto the mounting recess.

WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

- If lever B is held firmly and not pushed downwards to the stop, it will move back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball rod will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted » page 170, *Adjusting the ready position*.
- Store the ball rod in the box in the ready position and with the key facing upwards - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

Note

Remove any dirt from the ball rod before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Accessories

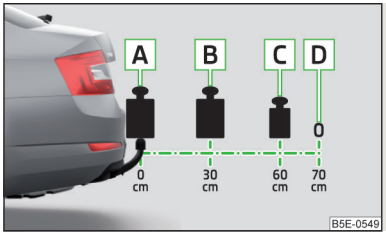

Fig. 177
Depiction of the maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch and of the permissible total weight of the accessory including the load, depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

An accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier) can be mounted on the ball head of the towing hitch.

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible total weight of the accessory including the load must be observed.

The maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch is **70 cm** » Fig. 177.

The total permitted weight of the accessory including load changes with increasing distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head of the towing hitch.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessory, including load			
	» Fig. 177	Vehicles with front-wheel drive	Vehicles with four-wheel drive	G-TEC vehicles
0 cm	A	75 kg	80 kg	56 kg
30 cm	B	75 kg	75 kg	56 kg
60 cm	C	35 kg	35 kg	28 kg
70 cm	D	0 kg	0 kg	0 kg

WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible total weight of the accessory including load - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.
- Never exceed the permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.

Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Note

If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » page 229.

Attaching and detaching trailers

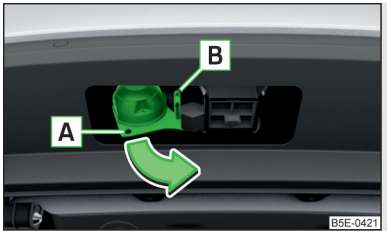

Fig. 178
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Attaching

› Fit the ball rod.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 178.
› Lift off protective cap 5 » Fig. 166 *on page 169* .
› Place the trailer onto the ball head.
› Plug the trailer cable into 13-pin socket A » Fig. 178.

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer to the security eyelet B.

When hooked into the safety eyelet, the breakaway cable of the trailer must **sag** relative to the vehicle in all trailer positions (sharp curves, reverse driving etc.).

Detaching

› Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the security eyelet B » Fig. 178.
› Pull the trailer cable connected out of the 13-pin socket.
› Remove the trailer from the ball head.
› Place cap 5 on to the ball head » Fig. 166 *on page 169*.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swivel in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 178.

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 71, *Operating the lights*[1].

Power to the trailer power grid

For the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer's power supply is provided by the vehicle.

The power supply works with ignition on or off.

! WARNING

- Incorrectly or improperly connected electrical installations may cause the entire vehicle electronics to malfunction, and may lead to accidents and serious injury from electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After attaching the trailer and connecting the power socket, check that the rear lights on the trailer are working correctly.
- The handbrake on the vehicle must be applied when attaching and disconnecting the trailer.
- Never use the safety eye to tow a vehicle!

Loading a trailer

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced. whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive at a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on the vehicle for a "full load" » page 204.

Towing capacity and trailer weight

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 238, *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

! WARNING

- The maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the permissible weight of the trailer must not be exceeded - risk of accident!
- Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

[1] Applies to vehicles with bi-xenon headlights.

Trailer operation

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when hitching a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning symbol in the instrument cluster » page 41 lights up.

The following information must be observed » page 41, *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING
- Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

CAUTION
If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 59.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.
- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION
For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 178before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Vehicle operation in different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

He or she will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage.

This relates to the coolant, the battery replacement etc.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

Component protection has been developed as a protection mechanism for the following situations.

› Impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft).
› Impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle.
› The possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODAvehicles can be recycled by up to 95 % and can always [1]be returned free of charge.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Washing by hand

Read and observe ! and ! on page 180 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

! WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

! CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe ! and ! on page 180 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

! CAUTION

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe ! and ! on page 180 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

! CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

i Note

See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 183 .

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

! CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

! CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

! CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and external mirrors

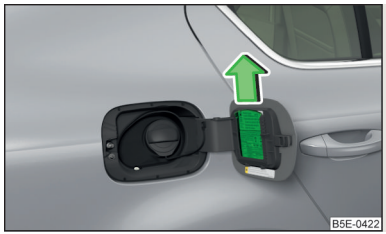

Fig. 179
Fuel filler flap: Remove ice scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Removing snow and ice

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 179.

Cleaning windows

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.

▪ Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
▪ Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows
▪ Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
▪ When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

Read and observe and on page 182 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

▪ The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
▪ Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
▪ Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Camera lens

Read and observe and on page 182 first.

Moisten the lens of the rear view camera first with clean water and then dry with a dry cloth.

Remove the snow from the lens with a brush and the ice from the lens with de-icing agents specifically developed for these purposes.

CAUTION

▪ Remove snow or ice on the lens with warm or hot water - there is a risk of damaging the lens.
▪ Never use cleaners containing abrasive effect to clean the lens.
▪ Never use pressurized water or steam jet to clean the lens.

Door closing cylinder

Read and observe and on page 182 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

Read and observe and on page 182 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Jack

Read and observe and on page 182 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Wheel rims
Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims.

! CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing hitch and mounting recess

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Seal the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

In the event of dirt, clean the interior surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Always check the ball head before attaching a trailer. Apply suitable grease where necessary.

Include the protective cap when stowing away the ball rod to protect the boot from getting contaminated.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Under-body protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire!

Wiper blades

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example » page 181.

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe and on page 186 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature embrittlement of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth ».

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Note

During the use of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

Read and observe ! and ! on page 186 first.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, luggage compartment cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

! CAUTION
- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe ! and ! on page 186 first.

Electrically heated seats
Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers. » !.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

! CAUTION
- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Safety belts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 186 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

! WARNING
- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct fuels for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 180 *on page 188*.

WARNING

- Observe the local regulations regarding fuel handling.
- The operating instructions of the refuelling system must always be followed.
- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - risk to life!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

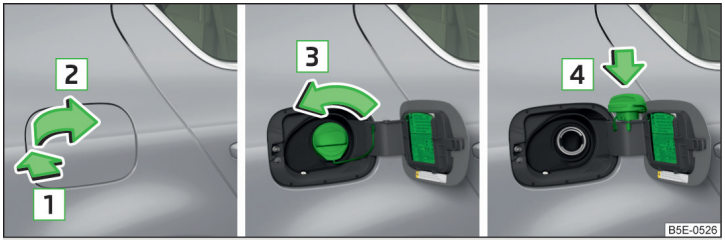

Fig. 180 **Open fuel filler flap/unscrew tank cap/place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

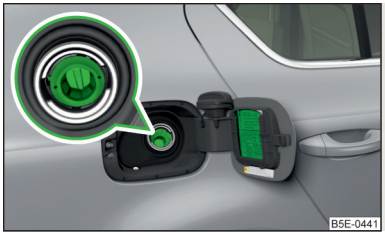

Fig. 181
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

Read and observe and on page 188 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 122.

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 180.
› Open the flap in the direction of arrow 2.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go, and refuel.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time ».

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it securely engages.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines
The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with a incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 181. This guard means it is only possible to refuel with the diesel pump nozzle.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister
- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident this can get damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.
- The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **50 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **6 litres**.

Lead-free petrol

Read and observe and on page 188 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** that meets the **EN 228**[1] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption ».

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

If unleaded gasoline is not available with the octane number **95** RON, in an emergency petrol with the octane rating of **91, 92** and **93** RON can be used to fill the tank, but this leads to a slight loss of performance and a slightly increased fuel consumption ».

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

In case of an emergency, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available ».

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!

CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

CAUTION

Under no circumstances may fuel additives with metal components be used, and especially not those with manganese and iron content. Risk of considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

CAUTION

Do not use fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol)**. Risk of considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!**

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 188 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[1] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[2].

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -24 °C.

Diesel fuel additives
The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.
[2] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with bio fuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Refuelling with CNG (compressed natural gas)

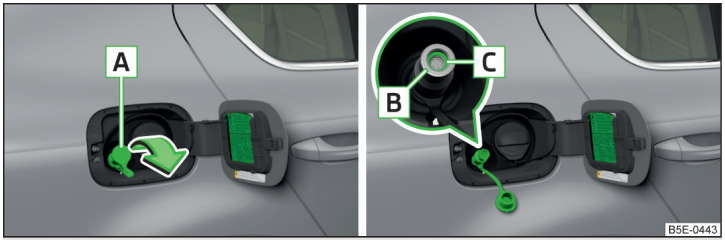

Fig. 182 **Natural gas filler tubes**

Read and observe and on page 188 first.

Natural gas refuelling can be carried out if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 122.

The gas filler tube for refuelling with natural gas is located behind the fuel filler flap next to the petrol filler tube.

The filling couplings of the natural gas refuelling systems may differ in handling. When refuelling with natural gas at unfamiliar refuelling systems, you should seek help from trained fuel station staff. If unsure, have the refuelling done by trained fuel station staff.

Open fuel filler flap

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Remove cap A » Fig. 182 from gas filler tube B in direction of the arrow.
› Plug the filling coupling of the refuelling system on the gas filler tube B.

The fuel tank is full when the compressor of the refuelling system automatically switches off. To stop the refuelling operation prematurely, press the "Stop " button of the refuelling system.

Closing the filler cap

› Check that sealing ring C » Fig. 182 has remained inserted in the gas filler tube.

If sealing ring C has slipped onto the filling coupling, reinsert it into the gas filler tube.

› Plug the cap A onto the gas filler tube.
› Close the bonnet.

The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection relating to the outdoor temperature. At very high outside temperatures, it may happen that the gas tank may not be fully refuelled.

The natural gas system of your vehicle is suitable both for "slow fuelling" (fuelling from small compressors) and for "quick fuelling" (fuelling from natural gas stations with large compressors).

If the vehicle is parked for a longer period of time immediately after refuelling, the situation may arise in which the pointer of the fuel tank gauge does not indicate exactly the same level as was the case immediately after refuelling when the engine is restarted. This is not due to any system leakages but a drop in pressure in the natural gas fuel tank due to technical reasons after a cooling phase directly after refuelling.

The maximum lifetime of the gas tank is 20 years.

The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately **15 kg.**

The capacity of the gasoline fuel tank is about **50 litres,** of which about **6 lighters** are in reserve.

WARNING

- When refuelling, never get into the vehicle. If you have to get into your vehicle in exceptional cases, touch a metal surface before you touch the filling coupling again. This will avoid electrostatic discharges, which may generate sparks. Sparks can cause a fire during refuelling.
- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.

Note

During the filling process sounds are heard which are harmless. If you are unsure which service station staff to use, ask the petrol station staff.

CNG

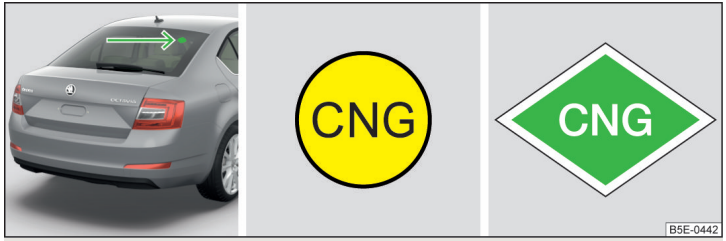

Fig. 183 **Position of the CNG label(s).**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 188 first.

A G-TEC-vehicle may be operated with CNG and petrol.

In some countries, national legislation requires that vehicles with CNG operation be identified by one of the listed labels » Fig. 183.

Position of the CNG label » Fig. 183.

Natural gas quality and consumption

Depending on the natural gas supplier, the natural gas quality (heating value) may vary. The engine control unit adjusts automatically to the natural gas quality.

Automatically switching over from natural gas mode to petrol mode

The vehicle automatically switches from natural gas to petrol, for example, if one of the following cases occurs.

› With an empty gas tank or not enough pressure in the tank.
› After refuelling with natural gas.
› At very low surrounding temperatures.

Gas smell

If you smell gas, proceed as follows.

› Stop the vehicle.
› Put out cigarettes.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
› Remove any spark-producing or incendiary items from the vehicle and switch off immediately.
› Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.

Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the gas system fault.

Regular gas system checks must be carried out at a specialist workshop on natural gas-powered vehicles.

WARNING

When operating a CNG-powered vehicle, the national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

Do not underestimate the smell of gas in the car or when refuelling - risk of fire, explosion and injury.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scolding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment
- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk of death! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

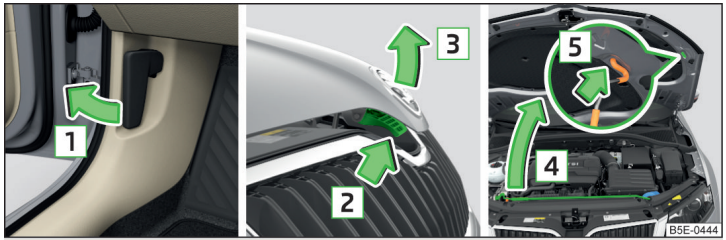

Fig. 184 **Open the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

Open flap

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 184.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

› Push the release lever in the direction of arrow 2.

The bonnet is then unlocked.

› Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in!**

! WARNING

- Check whether the bonnet has been closed properly. Also make sure that a vehicle with an opened bonnet does not appear in the instrument cluster display » page 47.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 184.

Engine compartment overview

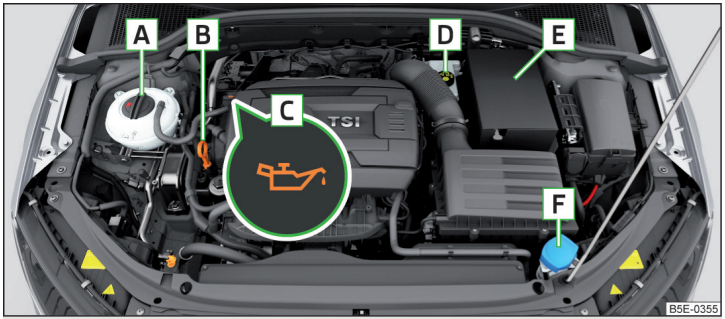

Fig. 185 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 185

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	198
B	Engine oil dipstick	196
C	Engine oil filler opening	197
D	Brake fluid reservoir	199
E	Battery (below a cover)	200
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	195

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

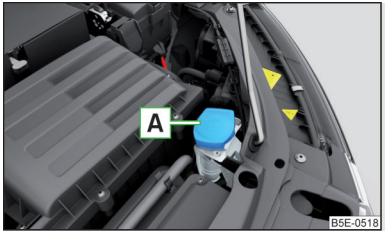

Fig. 186
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 193 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 186.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(in winter additionally with antifreeze)** which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

[1] In some countries, 4.7 ltr. applies for both variants.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 53.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 192.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 196 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/103 kW TSI	
1,8 l/132 kW TSI	
2,0 l/162 kW TSI	

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/110, 135 kW TDI CR	

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	
1.4 l/103 kW TSI	
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - for diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

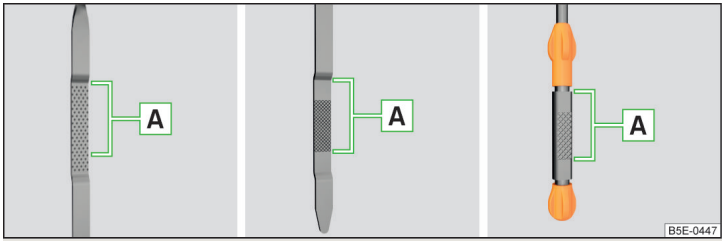

Fig. 187 **Principle sketch: Dipstick**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 196 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 187

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle stands on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
› Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the display of the instrument cluster shows a check mark and the corresponding message » page 42. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

▪ The oil level must never be above the A range » Fig. 187 – there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system!
▪ If for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ If the oil level is above level A, do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 196 first.

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 185 *on page 194*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 196.
› Check the oil level » page 196.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
› Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive level in the coolant must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 188 *on page 198*.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 192.
▪ The coolant is harmful to health.
▪ Avoid contact with the coolant.
▪ Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
▪ Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
▪ When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
▪ If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
▪ Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!

WARNING (Continued)

- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

CAUTION

- If for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the current circumstances, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - risk of engine damage, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to be less than 40 %.
- Over 60 % of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 188 *on page 198*.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Note

On vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation), the coolant capacity is approx. 1 l larger.

Checking the coolant level

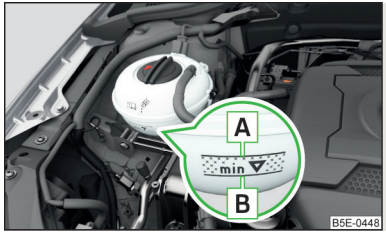

Fig. 188
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe and on page 197 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion tank » Fig. 188

A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level

B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off.

✓ The engine is not heated.

✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 188.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark A » Fig. 188.

In the event of an insufficient coolant level, the control symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification » page 41. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the expansion tank from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 197 first.

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » page 198, in section *Introduction*.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir and unscrew the cap **carefully**.

› Replenish the coolant.

› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- Only refill with new coolant.
- Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 189 *on page 199*.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 192.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 189 *on page 199*, do not continue driving - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection services.
- We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level

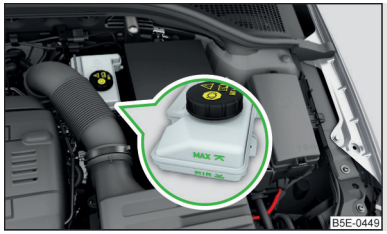

Fig. 189
Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe and on page 199 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 189.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » page 35.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 199 first.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by safety glasses or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal.
- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the relevant eye immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, seek immediate medical assistance!

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal ⊖ or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.

▪ Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
▪ If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

▪ We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
▪ You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

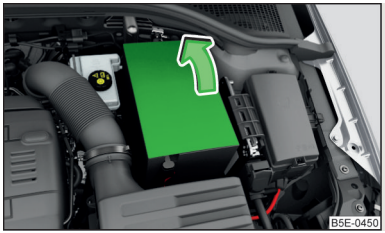

Fig. 190
Polyester cover of vehicle battery

Read and observe ! and ! on page 200 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. For some equipment variants, it is located underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 190.

› Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

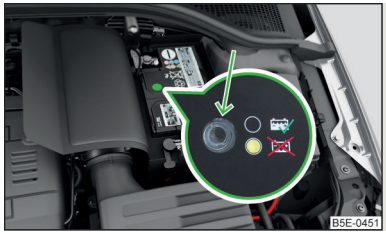

Fig. 191
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 200 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator » Fig. 191, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour of this display.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note

▪ The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
▪ For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 200 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ All consumers are turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents

› Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING

▪ When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
▪ Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
▪ Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
▪ Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖.
▪ "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
▪ We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), do not connect the pole terminal of the charger directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but rather only to the engine earth » page 220, *Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle*.

Replacing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 200 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

Read and observe ! and ! on page 200 first.

Disconnecting

› Switch off the ignition.

› Firstly disconnect the battery's negative terminal ⊖, followed by the positive terminal ⊕.

Connecting

› Firstly connect the battery's positive terminal ⊕, followed by the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electrical power windows	» page 66
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 68
Sun screen	» page 70
Radio or navigation system	Enter code » *Operating instructions for Infotainment Radio* or » *Operating instructions for Infotainment Navigation*
Time settings	» page 33

CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.

Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe and on page 200 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the bettery is subjected to heavy loads. This manifests itself by the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.

› Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or in case of emergency shut off completely.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

WARNING
The national legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.

WARNING
For safety reasons, do no replace tyres individually.

For the sake of the environment
Old and unserviceable tyres represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note
- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Notes on using wheels

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Tyre storage
Mark them previously used tyres so that you are able to fit them on again to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Tyre age
Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are more than 6 years old.

Wheel bolts
Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

WARNING
Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

Tyre pressure

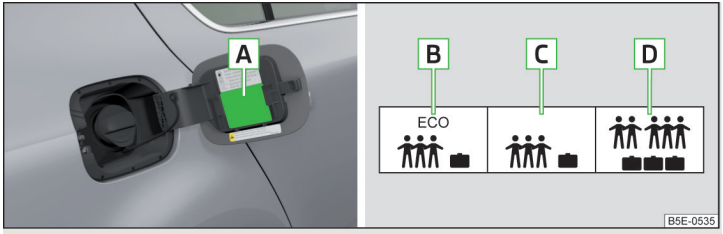

Fig. 192 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressures/inflating the tyres**

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

The tyre pressure must always be adjusted to match the load. The specified tyre pressures can be found on label A» Fig. 192.

Label with prescribed tyre inflation pressure values » Fig. 192

A Position of the CNG label
B Inflation pressure for half load
C Inflation pressure for increased driving comfort at half load
D Inflation pressure for full load

As a result of adjusting the pressure to the value C for increased driving comfort, fuel consumption may slightly increase.

Checking the tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 167.

WARNING
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater rolling resistance. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.
- In the event of very fast pressure loss, e.g. in the event of sudden tyre damage, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

For the sake of the environment
Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note
In some countries, the vehicles have a label without pictograms.

Tyre wear

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

The tyre wear depends on the tyre pressure, the driving style and other conditions.

Attention to the following notes may affect tyre wear.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Wheel balance
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, there are a wide range of influences which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, have the wheels checked by a specialist garage.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing or repairing the tyres.

Setting the vehicle geometry
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres and impairs driving safety. In the event of prominent tyre wear, we recommend that you have the setting of the vehicle geometry checked at a specialist garage.

WARNING
- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

Tyre wear indicator and wheel replacement

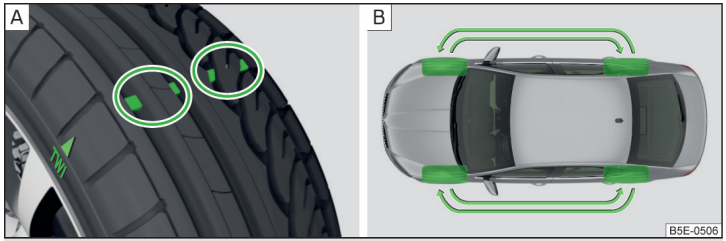

Fig. 193 **Principle sketch: Replace tire tread with wear indicators / wheels**

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

Wear indicators
There is a 1.6-mm-high wear indicator » Fig. 193 - A in the base of the tread of the tyres. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Replacing the wheels
For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you replace the wheels every 10,000 km as shown in the diagram » Fig. 193- B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved » page 167.

! WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface particularly at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

Tyre damage

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and perpendicularly wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

! WARNING

Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

! CAUTION

The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend having them checked out in a specialist garage.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are mainly.
› Increased driving stability.
› Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
› Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Manufacturer-approved tyre variants

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Approved tyre variants must be selected firstly for the model variant (Octavia GreenLine, Octavia Scout etc.) and then according to the engine size of your vehicle. If the model variant of your vehicle cannot be found in a separate module, then the approved tyre variants must be selected according to the engine size of your vehicle in module » page 208, *Octavia*.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

When fitting new tyres, the tyres must be replaced axle by axle.

The information listed in the table corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

The approved tyre/rim combinations for your vehicle can be found in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

Explanation of the tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings
For example, **195/65 R 15 91 T** means:

195	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example, **DOT ... 11 14...** means that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

The marking **M+S**means that the associated tyre is suitable for winter use.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
Load (In kg)	560	580	600	615	630	650	670	690

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed icon	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

CAUTION

The information about load index and speed symbol can be found in the in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

Octavia

Authorised tyre variants

Engine type	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	195/65 R15	91	T
	205/55 R16	91	T
	205/50 R17	89	T
	225/45 R17	91	T
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	195/65 R15	91	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	89	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.4 l/103 kW TSI	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	89	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	195/65 R15	91	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	89	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	89	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	195/65 R15	91	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	89	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
	225/40 R18	92	Y
1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR	195/65 R15	91	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	89	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
	225/40 R18	92	Y
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	195/65 R15	91	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	89	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	89	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y

Octavia GreenLine

Authorised tyre variants

Engine type	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	185/70 R15	89	H
	195/65 R15	91	H
	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	89	H

Octavia G-TEC

Authorised tyre variants

Engine type	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
1.4 l/81 kW TSI	205/55 R16	91	H
	205/50 R17	89	H
	225/45 R17	91	H
	225/40 R18	92	Y

Octavia Scout

Authorised tyre variants

Engine type	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	205/60 R16	92	V
	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	89	V
	205/55 R17	91	V
	225/50 R17	94	V
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	205/60 R16	92	V
	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	89	V
	205/55 R17	91	V
	225/50 R17	94	V
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	205/60 R16	92	V
	205/55 R16	91	V
	205/50 R17	89	V
	205/55 R17	91	V
	225/50 R17	94	V

Octavia RS

Authorised tyre variants

Engine type	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	205/50 R17	89	W
	225/45 R17	91	W
	225/40 R18	92	Y
	225/35 R19	88	Y
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	205/50 R17	89	V
	225/45 R17	91	V
	225/40 R18	92	Y
	225/35 R19	88	Y

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres

Summer tyres on ice, snee and at temperatures below 7 °C have less grip. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres.

To ensure the best possible handling, winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels. The minimum tread depth is 4 mm.

Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the maximum permissible speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the maximum possible speed of the vehicle is higher.

On vehicles with the Infotainment system with button **CAR**, the speed limit can be set for winter tyres » *Infotainment operating instructions*, chapter *Adjust vehicle systems (CAR button)* .

For other vehicles, there is the possibility to set the speed limit for winter tyres at a specialist garage.

Only use winter tyres or rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Octavia

Rim size	Depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15[a)]	43 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 15[a)]	47 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[b)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 13 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Octavia Scout

Rim size	Depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16[a)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17

Rim size	Depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16[a)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/60 R16
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 9 mm.

Octavia RS

Rim size	Depth D	Tyre size
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Remove the full wheel trims before fitting the snow chains » page 214.

WARNING

Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on snow-free roads. They would otherwise cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Location of the first-aid kit and warning triangle

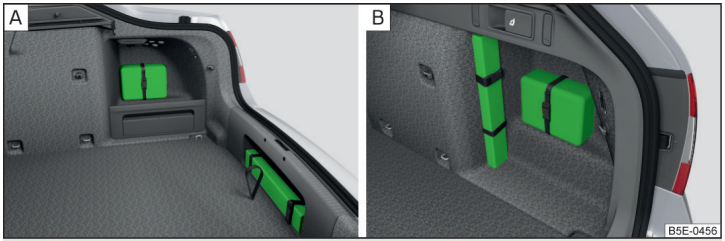

Fig. 194 **First aid kit and warning triangle version 1 / version 2**

The following information applies to the first-aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The storage compartments may possibly be too small for a different first-aid kit or warning triangle.

First-aid box
The first aid kit can be attached by a strap in the right-hand storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 194.

Warning triangle – version 1
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 194 - A. Natural gas vehicles have the warning triangle located under the floor mat in the luggage compartment.

Warning triangle – version 2
The warning triangle can be secured with straps in the right storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 194 - B.

! WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Location of the reflective vest

Fig. 195
Reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stored in brackets under the front seats » Fig. 195.

Fire extinguisher

Fig. 196
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 196.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.
› To fit in place, insert the fire extinguisher back into the bracket and secure with straps.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

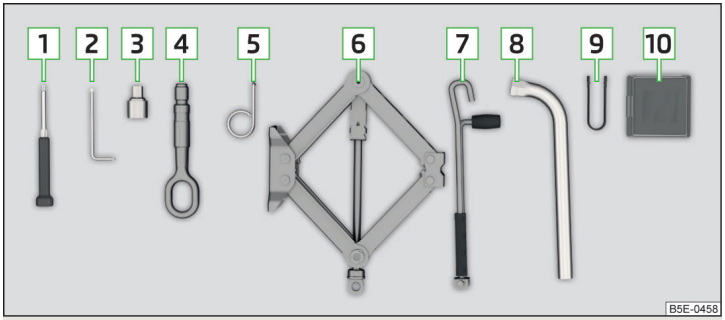

Fig. 197 **Vehicle tool kit**

The vehicle tool kit is housed in a box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Depending on the equipment variant, the vehicle tool kit may not contain all of the following components.

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Depending upon vehicle equipment: Jack with information sign/puncture repair kit
7 Crank for the jack
8 Wheel wrench
9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
10 Replacement bulb set

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Screw the jack back into the starting position before storing in the box with the vehicle tool kit.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the luggage compartment.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Reserve and temporary spare

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

When using an emergency or spare wheel make sure to fit a wheel with the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved » page 167.

WARNING

- If the spare tyre with a non-specific or opposite direction of rotation has to be fitted in the event of a puncture, then drive carefully. The tyre no longer retains its optimal characteristics in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.

Removing/storing the wheel

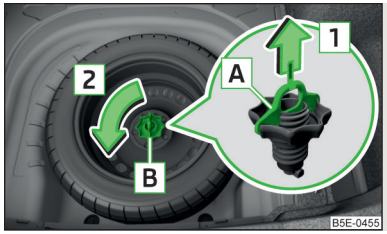

Fig. 198
Removing the wheel

Read and observe ! on page 213 first.

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with special bolt B » Fig. 198.

Take out wheel

› Open the boot lid.
› Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 106.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.
› Remove locking A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 198.
› Unscrew nut B in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

› Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Screw in nut B in the opposite direction to arrow 2 » Fig. 198.
› Insert locking A in the opposite direction to which arrow 1 is pointing.
› Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor covering in the boot » page 110.
› Shut the boot lid.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 213 first.

A yellow warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. ▸

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be specially attentive when driving.
› The emergency spare is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 204.
› The tyre inflation pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 420 kPa.
› Only use this emergency spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for permanent use.

WARNING
- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the temporary spare wheel when absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel change on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning light.
✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out of the vehicle.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).

If the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » page 207, *Explanation of the tyre labelling*.

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation

Before changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Switch off the engine.
› Engage **first gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission **into the P position**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 212 and the **spare wheel** » page 213 from the boot.

Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the full wheel trim.

Extracting

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 212 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening » .
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

CAUTION

Notes on wheel trims supplied at the factory or from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
- On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.

CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. The cover could be damaged.
- If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

Fig. 199
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the caps.

Extracting

› Push the extraction pliers » page 212 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 199.

Fitting

› Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

Changing a wheel

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 206.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!

Follow-up tasks

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 213.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved » page 167.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.

WARNING (Continued)

- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

Fig. 200
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the wheel bolt caps.

Release

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 200.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 200, until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts, replace the caps.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

Fig. 201 **Jacking points for the jack Version 1/version 2**

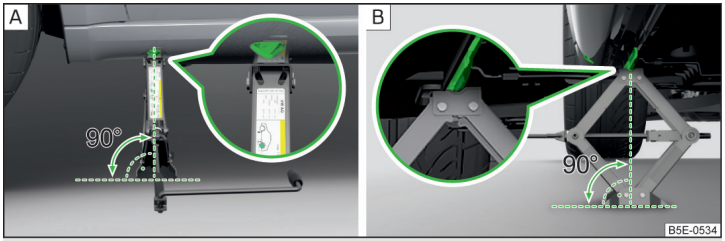

Fig. 202 **Schematic diagram: Positioning the jack**

The jack from the vehicle tool kit must be used in order to raise the vehicle.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

Jacking points – version 1
The jacking points are located on the metal bar of the lower beam.

Their positions are indicated by embossed markings A » Fig. 201 in the side of the lower beam.

Jacking points – version 2
The mounting points are located on the metal bar of the lower beam in the recess at the bottom of the plastic lower-beam casing B » Fig. 201.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 217.

Their positions are indicated by embossed markings B in the side of the lower beam.

Raising the vehicle

› Insert the crank 7 into the mount on the jack 6 » page 212.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is positioned vertically to the jacking point » Fig. 202.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar » Fig. 202.
› Continue to raise the jack until the wheel is just lifted off the ground.

WARNING

- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the bar of the lower beam, as otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

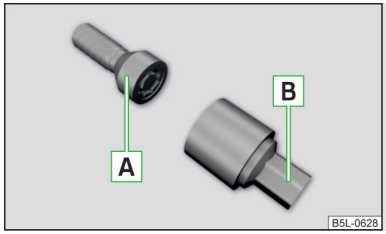

Fig. 203
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. These can only be loosened or tightened with the use of adapter B » Fig. 203.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› Insert adapter B » Fig. 203 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts A.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 216.
› Remove the adapter.
› Replace the wheel trim and the caps.

The adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in preparation for a possible wheel change. The adapter is kept in the vehicle tool kit.

Note

- Note down the code number located on both the adapter and also on the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Genuine Parts if required.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- With wheel trims supplied at the factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel trim. When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Puncture repair kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

WARNING

- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Components of the puncture repair kit

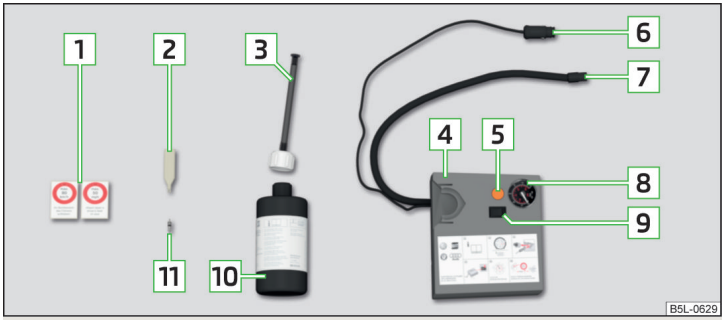

Fig. 204 **Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

Components of the set » Fig. 204

1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. This contains a sealant and an air compressor.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

General information

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning light.
✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out of the vehicle.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).

The national legal requirements must be observed when repairing a tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.
› The rim is damaged.
› The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
› The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
› The tyre wall is damaged.
› The result will be to drive with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
› The expiration date has passed (see inflation bottle).

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the puncture repair kit.

› Switch off the engine.
› Engage **first gear** or place the selector lever of the automatic transmission **into the P position**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 218.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the luggage compartment.
› Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 204 *on page 218* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

Sealing
› Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 204 *on page 218* back and forth several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 clockwise. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 2.

Inflating
› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 204 *on page 218* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 Volt socket » page 98.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with a repaired tyre

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 192.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

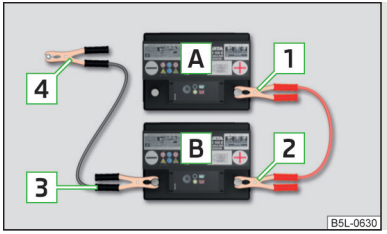

Fig. 205
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

Fig. 206
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 220 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.
- Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 205 .
- Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
- Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
- Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system» Fig. 206, connect the jump-start cable to the engine's earthing point.

Starting engine
- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Remove the jump-start cables exactly in the **reverse** sequence as for attaching.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables
Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

! WARNING
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

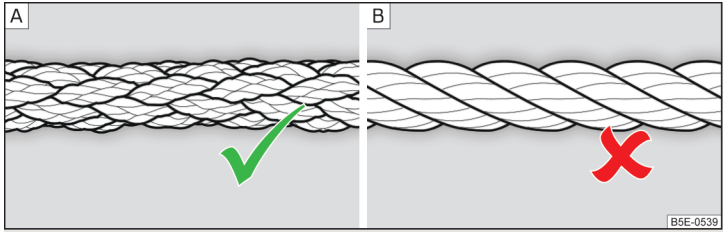

Fig. 207 **Braided tow ropes/spiral tow rope**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

A braided tow rope must be used for towing » Fig. 207- A.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Both drivers should be familiar with the problems which might possibly occur while a vehicle is being towed. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

! WARNING

- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- When towing, exercise increased caution.
- Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 207- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - risk of accident.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - risk of accident.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 220, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, your vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 222 or » page 223 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 169.

i Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye

Fig. 208 **Removing the cap / installing the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 222 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the area of arrow 1 » Fig. 208.
› Remove the cap in the direction of arrow 2.

› After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the cap in the area of arrow 1 and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 208 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

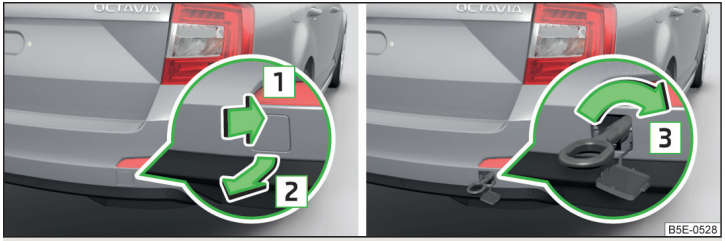

Fig. 209 **Expansion of the cap / installation of towing eye - Version 1**

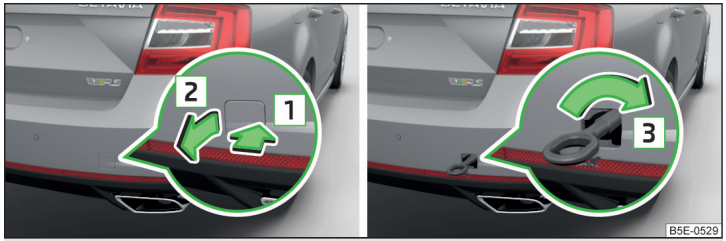

Fig. 210 **Expansion of the cap / installation of towing eye - Version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 222 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the area of arrow 1 » Fig. 209 or » Fig. 210.
› Remove the cap in the direction of arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the cap in the area of arrow 1.
› Press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye in as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 209 or » Fig. 210 to the stop » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 222 first.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 169, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

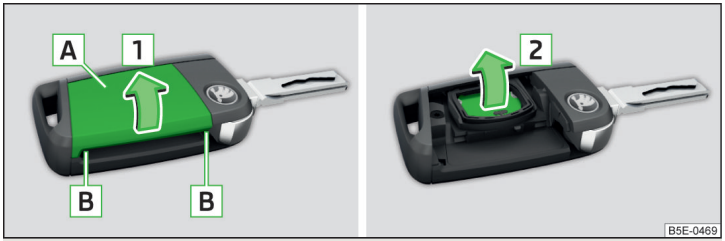

Fig. 211 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 224 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 211 with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 224.

Note

If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 224 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key via the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

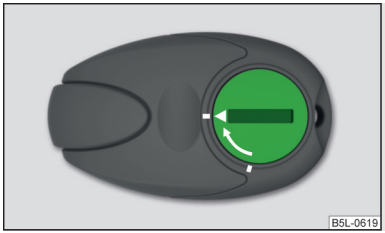

Fig. 212
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 224 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 212.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
› Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
› Replace the battery.
› Return the battery cover.
› Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

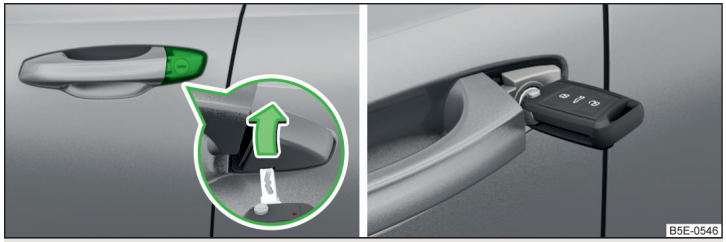

Fig. 213 **Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder/locking cylinder with key**

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover » Fig. 213.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.
› Release the door handle.
› For vehicles with **LHD**, insert the remote control key into the lock cylinder **with the buttons facing upwards** and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD**, insert the remote control key into the lock cylinder **with the buttons facing downwards** and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cap in its original position.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

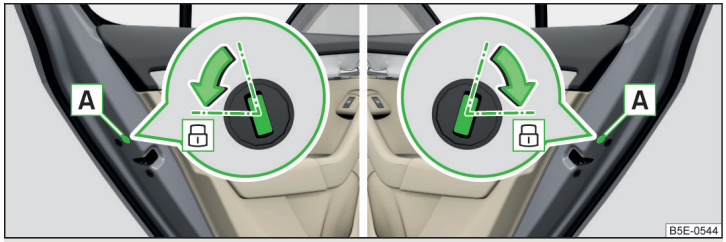

Fig. 214 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the panel A » Fig. 214.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (spring-loaded position).
› Replace the cover A.

Unlocking the tailgate

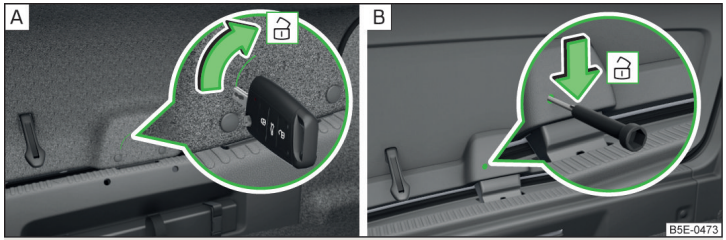

Fig. 215 **Emergency unlocking: Version 1/version 2**

Unlocking – version 1

› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 92.
› Insert the vehicle key or similar tool into the opening in the panel » Fig. 215-A to the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Unlocking – version 2

› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 92.
› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 215 - B as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

Fig. 216 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console » page 96.
› Grab hold of the cover A in the area of the arrows and carefully raise it forwards in the direction of the arrow 1 and then backwards » Fig. 216.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow 2.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

Fig. 217 **Windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 226 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades
- Closing the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position 4 and hold it in position for around 2 seconds » page 82, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade
- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 217 .
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » page 82, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

Fig. 218 **Rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 226 first.

Removing the wiper blade
- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 218.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 229, *Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel* or » page 231, *Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment*.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
orange/green	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 192.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at other points in the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel – LHD

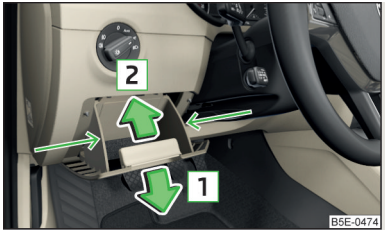

Fig. 219
Storage compartment on the driver's side: LHD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 228 first.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Replacing fuses

› Open the storage compartment » page 95.
› Grab hold of the storage compartment in the area of the arrows » Fig. 219.
› Fold out the storage compartment by pulling in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » Fig. 223 *on page 231* .
› Place the clip onto the respective fuse and pull the fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the bracket at the original position.

› Fold back the storage compartment by pressing into the secured position in the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel – RHD

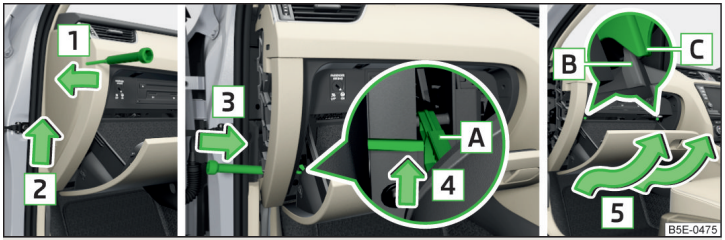

Fig. 220 **Storage compartment on the front passenger's side: RHD**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 228 first.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Removing the storage compartment and replacing the fuse

› Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 220.
› Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Open the storage compartment.
› Insert a screwdriver from the side into the dash panel in the direction of arrow 3.
› Use the screwdriver to unlock the brake rod A of the storage compartment in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » Fig. 223 *on page 231* .
› Place the clip onto the respective fuse and pull the fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the bracket at the original position.

Installing the storage compartment

› Move the stop buffer B of the storage compartment behind the brackets C » Fig. 220.
› Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 5.
› Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow 4 with a screwdriver.
› Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow 1.
› Close the storage compartment.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

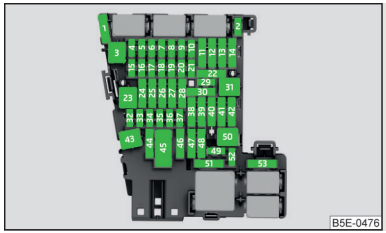

Fig. 221
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 228 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Not assigned
5	Data bus control unit
6	Alarm sensor
7	Control unit for the air conditioning system, heating, receiver for remote control for the auxiliary heating, selector lever for the automatic gearbox, relay for the rear window heater, replay for the windscreen heater
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic socket
9	Haldex clutch
10	Touchscreen
11	Heated rear seats

No.	Consumer
12	Radio
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning,heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Signal amplifier for telephone, telephone preinstallation
17	Instrument cluster
18	Not assigned
19	KESSY control unit
20	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
21	Not assigned
22	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
23	Light - right
24	Panorama roof
25	Control unit for central locking front door right, power windows - left
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Towing hitch - left light
29	CNG relay
30	Not assigned
31	Headlight - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS, ESC button, tyre control display, pressure sensor for air-conditioning, reverse light switch, interior mirror with automatic dimming, START-STOP button, telephone preinstallation, control for heating of rear seats, sensor for air-conditioning, 230 V power socket, sport-sound generator
35	Headlight, headlamp beam adjustment, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Towing hitch - right light

No.	Consumer
39	Control unit for central locking front door - right, power windows - front and rear right
40	12-Volt power socket
41	Not assigned
42	Control unit for central locking rear door - left, right, headlight cleaning system, windscreen wipers
43	Visor for gas discharge bulbs, interior lighting
44	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
45	Control unit for control of seat adjustment
46	230-Volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Not assigned
49	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
50	Opening the boot lid
51	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
52	Not assigned
53	Relay for rear window heater

Fuses in the engine compartment

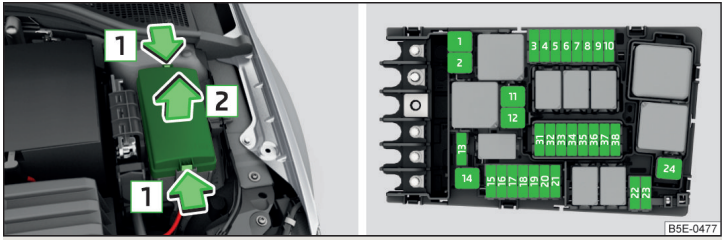

Fig. 222 **Removing the fuse box cover/fuses**

Fig. 223
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment: Plastic clip for fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 228 first.

Replacing fuses

› Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 222.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Place the cover on top of the fusebox.
› Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

! CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 228 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Control unit for ESC, ABS
2	Control unit for ESC, ABS
3	Engine control unit
4	Radiator fan, oil temperature sensor, air volume sensor, control valve for fuel pressure, relay for electrical auxiliary heating
5	Coil of the relay for the ignition system, coil of the CNG relay
6	Brake sensor
7	Coolant pump, radiator shutter
8	Lambda probe

No.	Consumer
9	Ignition, control unit for preheating system
10	Control unit for fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
14	Not assigned
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump
17	Control unit for ABS, ESC, engine control unit
18	Data bus control unit
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Alarm
21	Windscreen heater - left
22	Engine control unit
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Not assigned
32	Not assigned
33	Not assigned
34	Windscreen heater - right
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Control unit for auxiliary heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 192.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

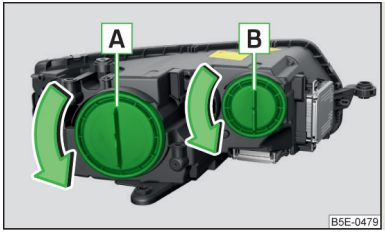

Fig. 224
Principle sketch: Headlights

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and a halogen bulb.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 224

A Low beam with halogen bulb or xenon gas discharge lamp
B Main beam, daytime running lights and parking lights/additional parking light

Replacing the low beam bulb

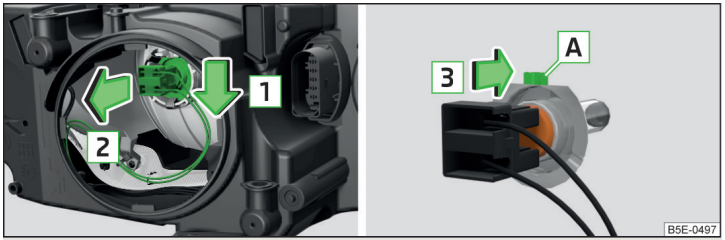

Fig. 225 **Headlight with halogen bulb: Bulb for low beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

› Turn the protective cap A » Fig. 224 *on page 232* in direction of the arrow.
› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 225.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb so that the fixing lug A » Fig. 225 fits the bulb into the recess on the reflector.
› Remove the hook in the direction of arrow 3.
› Insert the protective cap A » Fig. 224 *on page 232* and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Change bulb for long-distance, daytime running lights and parking light switch

Fig. 226
Bulbs for main beam, daytime running lights, and parking light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

› Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 224 *on page 232* in direction of the arrow.
› Pull the holder until it stops in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 226.
› Remove the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn opposite to arrow direction 1 as far as the stop.
› Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 224 *on page 232* and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Change bulb for additional parking light

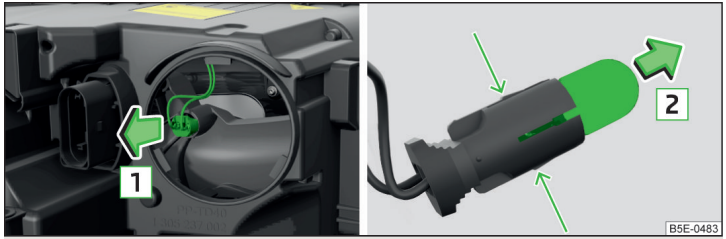

Fig. 227 **Headlights with Xenon light: Bulb for additional parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

› Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 224 *on page 232* in direction of the arrow.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 227.
› Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 224 *on page 232* and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 1

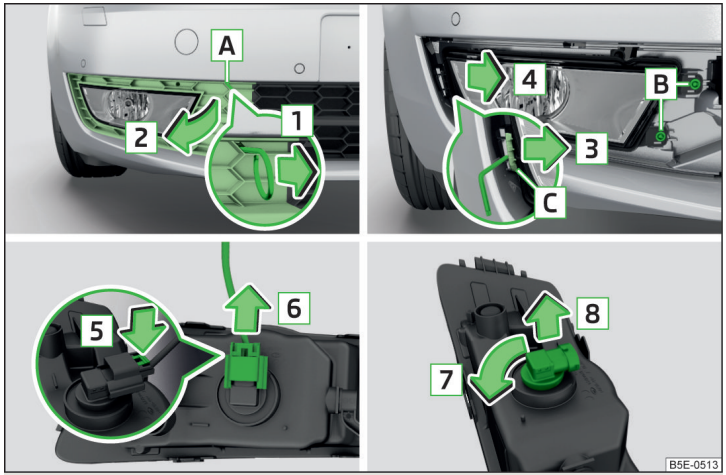

Fig. 228 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - Version 1**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert in opening A » Fig. 228 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Loosen the protective grille by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› With the key 2 » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit* unlock the locking C in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 4.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction 7.
› Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow 8.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 7 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 228 and tighten.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 2

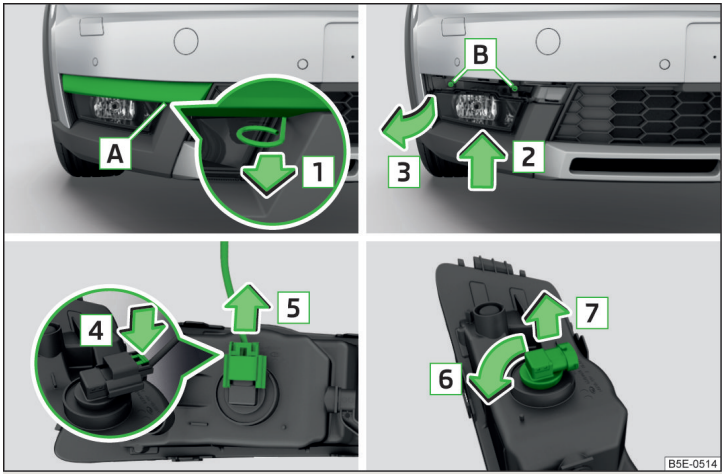

Fig. 229 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - Version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

Remove cover and headlight

› Insert in opening A » Fig. 229 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.

› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction 6.
› Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow 7.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refitting the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 229 and tighten.
› Replace the cover and press in gently.

The cover must engage securely.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

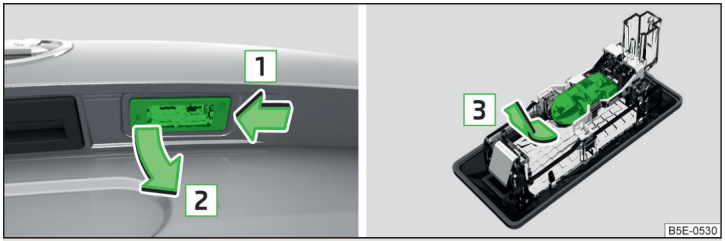

Fig. 230 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

› Open the luggage compartment lid.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 230.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.

[1] The position of the opening may vary depending on the vehicle model.

› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear Light

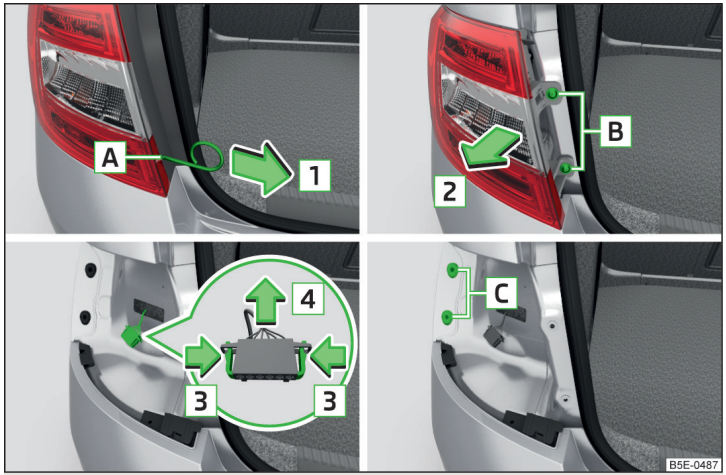

Fig. 231 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

Removing

› Open the tailgate.
› Insert into opening A [1] » Fig. 231 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit* .
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the key from the tool kit.
› Grasp the light and carefully remove with shaky movements in the direction of arrow 2.

› Press together the interlocks on the connector [1] in the direction of arrow 3.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 4.

Fitting

› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The locks on the plug must be inserted securely.

› Insert the lamp with the pin A » Fig. 232 *on page 236* into the recesses C » Fig. 231 in the body.
› Carefully push the cover in » !.
› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

! CAUTION

▪ Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
▪ If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
▪ Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 1

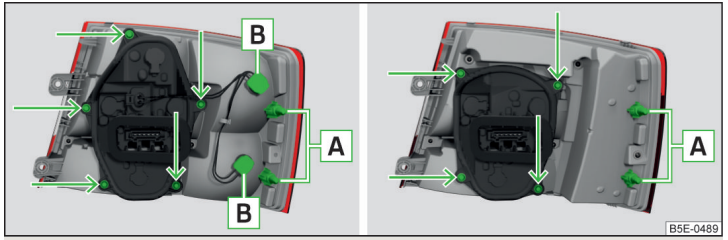

Fig. 232 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

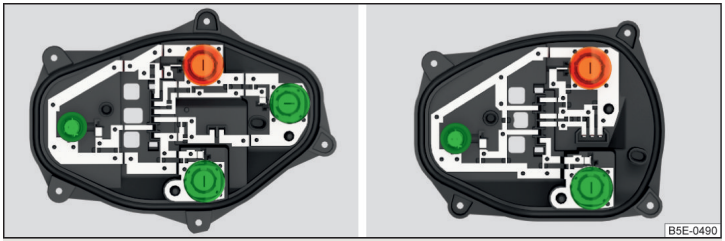

Fig. 233 **Inner part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the bulb holder B » Fig. 232 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the the stop.
› Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn **in** a clockwise direction to the stop.

Inner part of the light

› Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 232 with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the light assembly.
› Turn the respective light bulb » Fig. 233 until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.
› Screw on the lamp holder carefully.

[1] The design of the plug can vary depending on the vehicle equipment.

Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 2

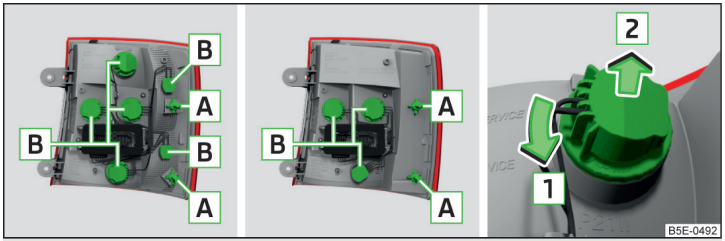

Fig. 234 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 232 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the socket with the bulb B in the direction of 1 » Fig. 234.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the the stop.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle characteristics

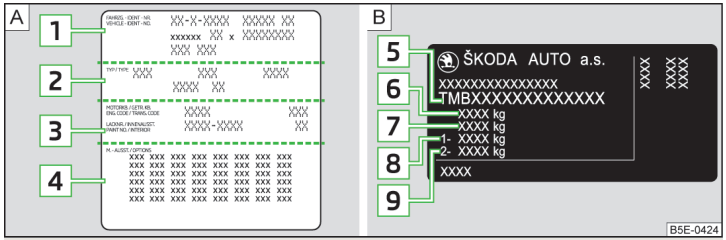

Fig. 235 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 235 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 235 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

5 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
6 Maximum permissible gross weight
7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
8 Maximum permissible front axle load
9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN can also be displayed in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight
This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » page 246, *Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type*.

Payload
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
› The weight of the passengers.
› The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
› The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
› The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
› The trailer drawbar load with trailer operation (max. 75 kg or 80 kg for vehicles with 4-wheel drive or 56 kg for G-TEC vehicles).

Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note
▪ The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
▪ Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

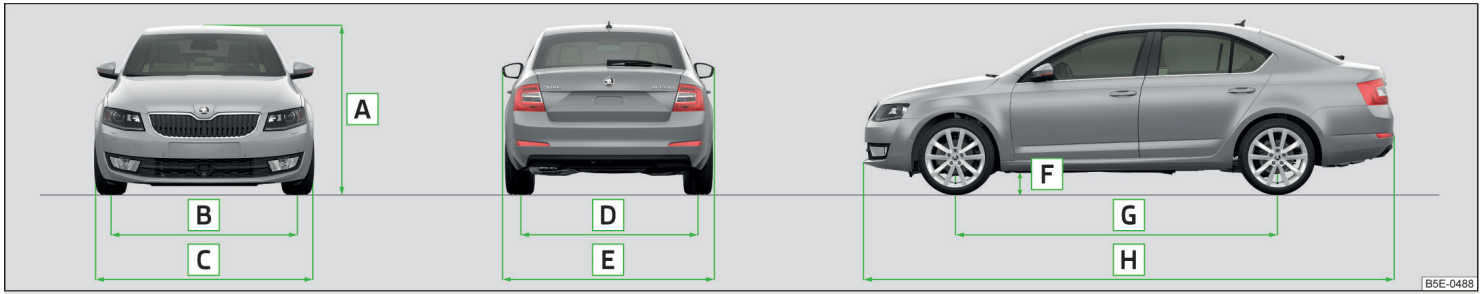

Fig. 236 **Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 236	Specification		Octavia	Octavia 4x4	Octavia RS
A	Height	Basic dimension	1461[a]/1458[b]	1460[a]/1459[b]	1449
		Vehicles with off-road package.	1476[a]/1474[b]	1475[a]/1474[b]	-
		Vehicles with SPORT package	1446[a]/1444[b]	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	1461	-	-
B	Front track » table *on page 241*				
C	Width		1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » table *on page 241*				
E	Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	140	138	128
		Vehicles with off-road package.	155	154	-
		Vehicles with SPORT package	125	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	140	-	-

» Fig. 23 6	Specification		Octavia	Octavia 4x4	Octavia RS
G	Wheel base	Basic dimension	2686	2680	2680
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	2680	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-
H	Length		4659	4659	4685

a) Valid for vehicles with 15" brakes
b) Valid for vehicles with 16" brakes

Front/rear track - petrol engines

Rim dimensions	1.2 l/63 kW TSI	1.2 l/77 kW TSI	1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	1.4 l/103 kW TSI	1.6 l/81 kW MPI	1.8 l/132 kW TSI	2.0 l/162 kW TSI
15"	1549/1520	1549/1520	-	-	1549/1520	-	-
16"	-	-	1543/1515	1543/1514	-	1543/1512	-
17"	-	-	-	-	-	-	1535/1506

Front/rear track - diesel engines

Rim dimensions	1.6 l/66 kW TDI	1.6 l/77 kW TDI	1.6 l/81 kW TDI	2.0 l/105 kW TDI	2.0 l/110 kW TDI	2.0 l/135 kW TDI
15"	1549/1520	1549/1520 (1549/1518)[a]	1549/1520	-	-	-
16"	-	-	-	1543/1514	1543/1514 (1543/1512)[a]	(1543/1512)[a]
17"	-	-	-	-	-	1535/1506

a) Applies to Octavia 4x4 vehicles.

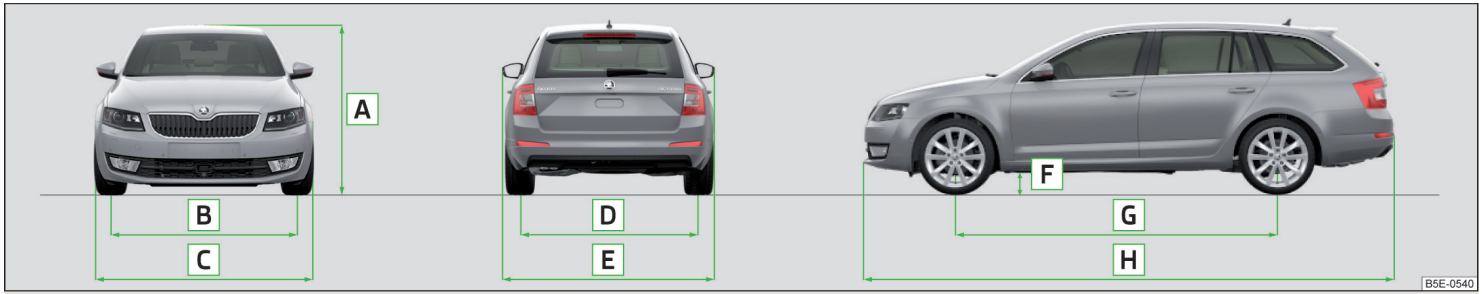

Fig. 237 **Schematic diagram: Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 237	Specification		Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	OCTAVIA Estate RS	OCTAVIA Estate SCOUT
A	Height	Basic dimension	1465[a]/1463[b]	1465[a]/1463[b]	1452	1531
		Vehicles with off-road package.	1480[a]/1478[b]	1480[a]/1478[b]	-	-
		Vehicles with SPORT package	1450[a]/1448[b]	-	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	1465	-	-	-
B	Front track » table *on page 243*					
C	Width		1814	1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » table *on page 243*					
E	Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	140	139	127	171
		Vehicles with off-road package.	155	154	-	
		Vehicles with SPORT package	125	-	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	140	-	-	-

» Fig. 237	Specification		Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	OCTAVIA Estate RS	OCTAVIA Estate SCOUT
G	Wheel base	Basic dimension	2686	2680	2680	2679
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	2680	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-	-
H	Length		4659	4659	4685	4685

a) Valid for vehicles with 15" brakes
b) Valid for vehicles with 16" brakes

Track gauge front/rear

Rim dimensions	1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	1.4 l/103 kW TSI	1.6 l./81 kW MPI	1.8 l/132 kW TSI	2.0 l/162 kW TSI
15"	1549/1520	1549/1520	-	-	1549/1520	-	-
16"	-	-	1543/1515	1543/1514	-	1543/1512	-
17"	-	-	-	-	-	(1538/1506)[a]	1535/1506

a) Applies to the Octavia Estate SCOUT vehicles.

Front/rear track - diesel engines

Rim dimensions	1.6 l/66 kW TDI	1.6 l/77 kW TDI	1.6 l/81 kW TDI	2.0 l/105 kW TDI	2.0 l/110 kW TDI	2.0 l/135 kW TDI
15"	1549/1520	1549/1520 (1549/1518)[a]	1549/1520	-	-	-
16"	-	-	-	1543/1514	1543/1514 (1543/1512)[a]	(1543/1512)[a]
17"	-	-	-	-	(1538/1506)[b]	1535/1506 (1538/1506)[b]

a) Does not apply to Octavia Estate 4x4 vehicles.
b) Applies to the Octavia Estate SCOUT vehicles.

Departure angle - Octavia

Fig. 238
Principle sketch: Departure angle

Angle » Fig. 238

A Departure angle, front
B Departure angle, rear

Departure angle
The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment on which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum front or rear axle load

Departure angle (°)

» Fig. 238	Octavia		Octavia 4x4		Octavia RS	
	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	14	12.3	14.1	12.4	-	-
Vehicles with off-road package.	15.1	13	15.3	12.2	-	-
Vehicles with SPORT package	12.9	12.5	-	-	12.9	12.4

Departure angle - Octavia Combi

Fig. 239
Schematic diagram: Departure angle

Angle » Fig. 239

A Departure angle, front
B Departure angle, rear

Departure angle
The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment on which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum front or rear axle load

Departure angle (°)

» Fig. 239	Octavia Estate		OCTAVIA Estate 4x4		OCTAVIA Estate RS		OCTAVIA Estate SCOUT	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	13.9	12.2	14.2	12.5	-	-	-	-
Vehicles with off-road package.	14.9	13.2	15.3	12.4	-	-	16.7	13.8
Vehicles with SPORT package	12.8	12.4	-	-	12.8	12.3	-	-

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 l/63 kW TSI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
63/4300-5300	160/1400-3500	4/1197

Performance and weights		MG5
Top speed (km/h)		181
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		12.0
Operating weight (kg)		1225
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1100
	Gradients up to 8 %	1300
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		610

1.2 l/63 kW TSI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
63/4300-5300	160/1400-3500	4/1197

Performance and weights		MG5
Top speed (km/h)		178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		12.2
Operating weight (kg)		1247
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1100
	Gradients up to 8 %	1300
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		620

1.2 l/77 kW TSI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/4500-5500	175/1400-4000	4/1197

Performance and weights		MG5	MG6	DSG7
Top speed (km/h)		196	196	196
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.3	10.3	10.5
Operating weight (kg)		1225	1230	1255
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1300	1300	1300
	Gradients up to 8 %	1500	1500	1500
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		610	610	620

1.2 l/77 kW TSI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/4500-5500	175/1400-4000	4/1197

Performance and weights		MG5	MG6	DSG7
Top speed (km/h)		193	193	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.5	10.5	10.6
Operating weight (kg)		1247	1252	1277
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1300	1300	1300
	Gradients up to 8 %	1500	1500	1500
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		620	620	630

1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/4800-6000	200/1500-3500	4/1395

Performance and weights		MG6
Top speed (km/h)		195
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.9
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	Vehicles with towing hitch	1394-1522
	Vehicles without towing hitch	1394-1524
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1400
	Gradients up to 8 %	1700
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		690

1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/4800-6000	200/1500-3500	4/1395

Performance and weights		MG6
Top speed (km/h)		193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		11.0
Operating weight (kg) - depending on equipment configuration	Vehicles with towing hitch	1416-1509
	Vehicles without towing hitch	1416-1559
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1400
	Gradients up to 8 %	1700
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		700

1.4 l/103 kW TSI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
103/4500-6000	250/1500-3500	4/1395

Performance and weights		MG6	MG6 Green tec	DSG7	DSG7 Green tec
Top speed (km/h)		215	215	215	215
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.4	8.4	8.5	8.5
Operating weight (kg)		1250	1255	1265	1270
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1500	1500	1500	1500
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		620	620	630	630

1.4 l/103 kW TSI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
103/4500-6000	250/1500-3500	4/1395

Performance and weights		MG6	MG6 Green tec	DSG7	DSG7 Green tec
Top speed (km/h)		212	212	212	212
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.5	8.5	8.6	8.6
Operating weight (kg)		1272	1277	1287	1292
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1500	1500	1500	1500
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		630	630	640	640

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/5500-5800	155/3800	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG5	AG6
Top speed (km/h)		192	190
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.6	12.0
Operating weight (kg)		1210	1250
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1100	1100
	Gradients up to 8 %	1300	1300
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		600	620

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/5500-5800	155/3800	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG5	AG6
Top speed (km/h)		191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.8	12.2
Operating weight (kg)		1232	1272
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1100	1100
	Gradients up to 8 %	1300	1300
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		610	620

1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine - Octavia

Gearbox	Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
MG6, DSG7	132/5100-6200	250/1250-5000	4/1798
DSG6 4x4	132/4500-6200	280/1350-4500	

Performance and weights		MG6	MG6 Green tec	DSG7	DSG7 Green tec	DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		231	231	231	231	229
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		7.3	7.3	7.4	7.4	7.4
Operating weight (kg)		1315	1320	1330	1335	1428
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		650	650	660	660	710

1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine - Octavia Combi

Gearbox	Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
MG6, DSG7	132/5100-6200	250/1250-5000	4/1798
DSG6 4x4	132/4500-6200	280/1350-4500	

Performance and weights		MG6	MG6 Green tec	DSG7	DSG7 Green tec	DSG6 4x4	SCOUT DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		229	229	229	229	227	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		7.4	7.4	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.8
Operating weight (kg)		1337	1342	1352	1357	1450	1522
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600	1600
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	1800	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		660	660	670	670	720	750

2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine - Octavia RS

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
162/4500-6200	350/1500-4400	4/1984

Performance and weights		MG6	DSG6
Top speed (km/h)		248	245
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		6.8	6.9
Operating weight (kg)		1425	1445
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		710	720

2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine - Octavia Combi RS

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
162/4500-6200	350/1500-4400	4/1984

Performance and weights		MG6	DSG6
Top speed (km/h)		244	242
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		6.9	7.1
Operating weight (kg)		1447	1467
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		720	730

1.6 l/66 kW TDI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
66/2750-4800	230/1400-2700	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG5
Top speed (km/h)		186
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		12.2
Operating weight (kg)		1300
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1400
	Gradients up to 8 %	1700
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		640

1.6 l/66 kW TDI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
66/2750-4800	230/1400-2700	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG5
Top speed (km/h)		183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		12.3
Operating weight (kg)		1322
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1400
	Gradients up to 8 %	1700
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		650

1.6 l/77 kW TDI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/3000-4000	250/1500-2750	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG5	MG5 Green tec	DSG7	MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		194	194	194	191
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.8	10.8	10.9	11.5
Operating weight (kg)		1300	1305	1320	1413
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1500	1500	1500	1700
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		640	650	650	700

1.6 l/77 kW TDI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/3000-4000	250/1500-2750	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG5	MG5 Green tec	DSG7	MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		191	191	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		11.0	11.0	11.1	11.7
Operating weight (kg)		1322	1327	1342	1435
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1500	1500	1500	1700
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		650	660	660	710

1.6 l/81 kW TDI engine - Octavia GreenLine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/3250-4000	250/1500-3000	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG6
Top speed (km/h)		206
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.6
Operating weight (kg)		1280
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1000
	Gradients up to 8 %	1300
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		640

1.6 l/81 kW TDI engine - Octavia Combi GreenLine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/3250-4000	250/1500-3000	4/1598

Performance and weights		MG6
Top speed (km/h)		204
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		10.7
Operating weight (kg)		1280
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1000
	Gradients up to 8 %	1300
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		640

2.0 l/105 kW TDI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
105/3500-4000	320/1750-3000	4/1968

Performance and weights		MG6	DSG6
Top speed (km/h)		215	212
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.7	8.9
Operating weight (kg)		1325	1345
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		660	670

2.0 l/105 kW TDI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
105/3500-4000	320/1750-3000	4/1968

Performance and weights		MG6	DSG6
Top speed (km/h)		213	210
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.7	9.0
Operating weight (kg)		1347	1367
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		670	680

2.0 l/110 kW TDI engine - Octavia

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
110/3500-4000	320/1750-3000	4/1968

Performance and weights		MG6	MG6 Green tec	DSG6	MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		218	218	215	215
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.5	8.5	8.6	8.6
Operating weight (kg)		1325	1330	1350	1433
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600	1600	2000
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		660	660	670	710

2.0 l/110 kW TDI engine - Octavia Combi

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
110/3500-4000	320/1750-3000 (340/1750-3000)[a)]	4/1968

[a)] Applies to the Octavia Estate SCOUT.

Performance and weights		MG6	MG6 Green tec	DSG6	MG6 4x4	SCOUT MG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		216	216	213	213	207
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.6	8.6	8.7	8.7	9.1
Operating weight (kg)		1347	1352	1372	1455	1526
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600	1600	2000	2000
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	1800	2000	2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		670	670	680	720	750

2.0 l/135 kW TDI engine - Octavia

Gearbox	Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
MG6, DSG6	135/3500-4000	380/1750-3000	4/1968
DSG6 4x4		380/1750-3250	

Performance and weights		RS MG6	RS DSG6	DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		232	230	228
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.1	8.2	7.1
Operating weight (kg)		1460	1480	1463
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600	1800
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		730	740	730

2.0 l/135 kW TDI engine - Octavia Combi

Gearbox	Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
MG6, DSG6	135/3500-4000	380/1750-3000	4/1968
DSG6 4x4		380/1750-3250	

Performance and weights		RS MG6	RS DSG6	DSG6 4x4	SCOUT DSG6 4x4
Top speed (km/h)		230	228	226	219
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)		8.2	8.3	7.2	7.8
Operating weight (kg)		1482	1502	1485	1559
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Gradients up to 12%	1600	1600	1800	1800
	Gradients up to 8 %	1800	1800	2000	2000
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		740	750	730	750

Index

A

B

C

F

G

H

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.

Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

- Easy content navigation
- Easy content reading
- Full text search through the entire manual
- Tab for quick access to favourite chapter

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Please also pay attention to the parts in the Owner's manual marked below .

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Octavia anglicky 11.2014
S65.5610.17.20
5E0012720AF

5E0012720AF